

ADMIN

Brown Algae

EXPERT PANEL MEETING

SEPTEMBER 8-9, 2025



Commitment & Credibility since 1976

Memorandum

To: Expert Panel for Cosmetic Ingredient Safety Members and Liaisons
From: Priya Ferguson, M.S.
Senior Scientific Analyst/Writer, CIR
Date: August 15, 2025
Subject: Petition to re-open report on brown algae-derived ingredients

In September 2019, the Expert Panel for Cosmetic Ingredient Safety (Panel) issued a final report on 82 brown algae-derived ingredients (*report_BrownAlgae_092025*), with the conclusion that 68 of these ingredients were safe in the present practices of use and concentration. The Panel also concluded that the available data were insufficient to support a conclusion of safety for the remaining 14 ingredients. In 2019, ingredient data profiles were considered sufficient when either composition data, systemic toxicity data (via use in food, GRAS status, or oral toxicity), or sensitization data were available.

In December 2024, data (*data_BrownAlgae_092025*) were received on Cladosiphon Novae-Caledoniae Extract (a brown algae-derived ingredient that was previously found insufficient). This submission included a request for the Panel to reconsider the current conclusion on this ingredient. Received data include:

- preparation and composition information
- safety study summaries on the following:
 - acute oral toxicity
 - dermal irritation assays (rabbit and human)
 - phototoxicity assay
 - eye mucous membrane irritation assay
 - dermal sensitization assay (guinea pig and HRIPT)
 - photosensitization assay
 - genotoxicity assays

Accordingly, the Panel is being asked if this report should be re-opened for the addition of this new data and for a potential change to the conclusion. **In other words, considering this submission, are the data now sufficient to conclude on the safety of Cladosiphon Novae-Caledoniae Extract as used in cosmetics?** If so, CIR staff will issue a revised report with such a conclusion.

Safety Assessment of Brown Algae-Derived Ingredients as Used in Cosmetics

Status: Final Report
Release Date: October 4, 2019
Panel Meeting Date: September 16-17, 2019

The 2019 Cosmetic Ingredient Review Expert Panel members are: Chair, Wilma F. Bergfeld, M.D., F.A.C.P.; Donald V. Belsito, M.D.; Curtis D. Klaassen, Ph.D.; Daniel C. Liebler, Ph.D.; James G. Marks, Jr., M.D.; Ronald C. Shank, Ph.D.; Thomas J. Slaga, Ph.D.; and Paul W. Snyder, D.V.M., Ph.D. The CIR Executive Director is Bart Heldreth, Ph.D. This report was prepared by Lillian C. Becker, former Scientific Analyst/Writer and Priya Cherian, Scientific Analyst/Writer.

ABSTRACT

The Cosmetic Ingredient Review (CIR) Expert Panel (Panel) assessed the safety of brown algae-derived ingredients; 82 brown algae-derived ingredients were found in the in the web-based *International Cosmetic Ingredient Dictionary and Handbook* (wINCI; *Dictionary*), however, several of these ingredients may be equivalent according to accepted scientific names. The Panel reviewed the available data to determine the safety of these ingredients, which are frequently reported to function in cosmetics as skin-conditioning agents. Impurities, particularly arsenic, may be present in these ingredients. Industry should continue to use good manufacturing practices to monitor and limit these possible impurities. The Panel concluded that 68 brown algae-derived ingredients are safe in cosmetics in the present practices of use and concentration described in this safety assessment. The Panel also concluded that the data are insufficient to determine the safety of the remaining ingredients under the intended conditions of use in cosmetic formulations.

INTRODUCTION

This is a safety assessment of brown algae-derived ingredients as used in cosmetics. The ingredients in this review are extracts, powders, juices, or waters derived from one or multiple species of brown algae. A total of 82 International Nomenclature Cosmetic Ingredient (INCI) names identifying brown algae-derived ingredients (Table 1) were found in the *Dictionary*; however, several of these ingredients appear to be equivalent based on the accepted scientific name, as given in the definition (Table 2).¹ Accordingly, the total number of distinct cosmetic ingredients is 74.

These ingredients are a highly complex group, all of which are marine-derived, with intricate chemistry and complex compositions. According to the *Dictionary*, these brown algae-derived ingredients are most commonly used as skin conditioning agents (Table 2).¹ These ingredients are also reported to be used as absorbents, antioxidants, binders, hair conditioning agents, oxidizing agents, pH adjusters, and viscosity increasing agents. The safety of these ingredients was assessed based on the availability of systemic toxicity data, via oral repeated dose toxicity studies, use in food, generally recognized as safe (GRAS) status, and on studies examining potential local effects, such as sensitization.

There are several major groups of algae (as described in “Algae Identification” section). However, this safety assessment focuses only on brown algae. The names of the ingredients in this report are written in accordance with the INCI naming conventions, i.e., capitalized without italics or abbreviations. When referring to the algae from which these ingredients are derived, the standard taxonomic practice of using *italics* is followed (e.g., *Agarum cribrosum*). The term “kelp” is commonly used when referring to a major group of brown algae species. Kelp are large brown algae that belong to the order Laminariales.²

Several brown algae constituents, such as phytosterols,³ phytosteryl ingredients,³ and alginic acid⁴ were found to be safe as used by the Panel. The full reports on these ingredients can be accessed on the CIR website (<https://www.cir-safety.org/ingredients>); therefore, information regarding these ingredients will not be included in this report.

This safety assessment includes relevant published and unpublished data that are available for each endpoint that is evaluated. Published data are identified by conducting an exhaustive search of the literature. A listing of the search engines and websites that are used and the sources that are typically explored, as well as the endpoints that CIR typically evaluates, is provided on the CIR website (<https://www.cir-safety.org/supplementaldoc/preliminary-search-engines-and-websites>; <https://www.cir-safety.org/supplementaldoc/cir-report-format-outline>). Unpublished data were provided by the cosmetics industry.

The European Chemical Agency (ECHA)^{5,6} website provides summaries of data generated by industry, and is cited throughout the report as appropriate. Also referenced in this safety assessment are summary data found in other reports, including those published by the European Medicines Agency (EMA),^{7,8} the European Food Safety Authority (EFSA) Panel on Dietetic Products, Nutrition and Allergies (NDA),⁹ and Food Standards Australia New Zealand (FSANZ).^{10,11}

CHEMISTRY

Definitions

The ingredients in this safety assessment are derived from various species of brown algae. “Algae” is not a taxonomic group, but a functional group of convenience.¹² Not all algae should be considered to be plant-like (seaweed; macroalgae). While some algae are seaweed, some are protozoa, and some are unique and belong in other kingdoms. However, these aquatic and oxygenic organisms are all part of the eclectic group called “algae.”

Algae Identification

There are several major groups of algae, and they are commonly referred to as brown algae (*Phaeophyceae*), green algae (*Chlorophyta*), diatoms (*Bacillariophyceae*), chrysophytes (*Chrysophyta*), blue-green algae (*Cyanophyta*), red algae (*Rhodophyta*), dinoflagellates (*Pyrrhophyta*), and euglenoids (*Euglenophyta*). A description of these major algal groups can be seen in Table 3. The various types of algae are arranged by storage products, pigmentation, and cell wall composition.¹² A list of the brown algae-derived ingredients, based on their corresponding subclass, order, family and genus, is presented in Table 4.

Brown algae are mostly comprised of large, leathery seaweeds and are classified in about 265 genera with, in aggregate, more than 1500 species.^{12,13} The actual color varies depending on the proportion of brown pigment (fucoxanthin) to green pigment (chlorophyll). This algal group contains alginic acid and fucoidan in its complex cell walls. General characteristics and the geographic distribution of several specific species of brown algae included in this report are presented in Table 5.

As with plant-derived ingredients, the constituent composition of these seaweed ingredients can vary widely depending on growing conditions, age of the organisms, local environmental aspects, harvesting conditions, methods of extraction, and many other variables. For example, the concentration of the most abundant carotenoid pigment in brown algae, fucoxanthin, varies remarkably depending on the age of the alga, and the protein content in brown algae varies considerably depending on the season in which it is harvested.^{14,15}

Physical and Chemical Properties

Physical and chemical properties of Ascophyllum Nodosum Extract, Ascophyllum Nodosum Powder, Ecklonia Cava Extract, and Halidrys Siliquosa Extract (aq.) are presented in Table 6. Using the sieve method, 93.5% of the particle sizes of Ascophyllum Nodosum Extract, as a fully dried extract, were less than 0.250 mm and greater than 0.045 mm.⁶

Harvesting

Originally, the only source of brown algae was in the wild; but since the mid-twentieth century, demand has exceeded the supply that could be harvested from wild sources, and methods for cultivation have been developed.¹⁶ Consequently, today, commercial brown seaweed comes mainly from farming rather than wild sources. *Laminaria japonica* and *Undaria pinnatifida* are among the most cultivated species of brown algae.¹⁷ Several species, such as *Laminaria japonica*, are grown on suspended ropes in the ocean.¹⁶ Repeated harvesting of *Macrocystis pyrifera* over a 3-month period did not significantly impact tissue chemical properties (i.e. alginate yield; viscosity and strength; nutritional quality, such as protein, carbohydrate, lipid, crude fiber, ash, and energy content; and tissue carbon/nitrogen ratios).¹⁸

Method of Manufacture

Numerous methods of manufacture are provided in Table 7. Several of these methods have a target constituent or composition (e.g., high in fucoidan). The characterization of the final extract is provided in the table. A general overview of a method of manufacture for the relevant brown algae-derived ingredients can be seen in Figure 1.

Arsenic is a constituent of concern in certain brown algae [see Constituents of Concern].^{10,11,19,20} There are methods to remove the arsenic, including extraction with water, methanol, or water/methanol mixtures accompanied with sonication or mechanical agitation.²¹ Extraction with microwave-assisted heating and accelerated solvent extraction systems are described in the literature.²¹ Soaking the algae in water at room temperature followed by simmering in the water is shown to be effective for removing inorganic arsenic.²² Another variation entails repeated boiling in seawater, and replacing the water three times, after initial soaking.¹⁹ Soaking the algae in a simmering 4% acetic acid or a 4% sodium hydrogen carbonate aqueous solution has also been shown to remove arsenic.²³

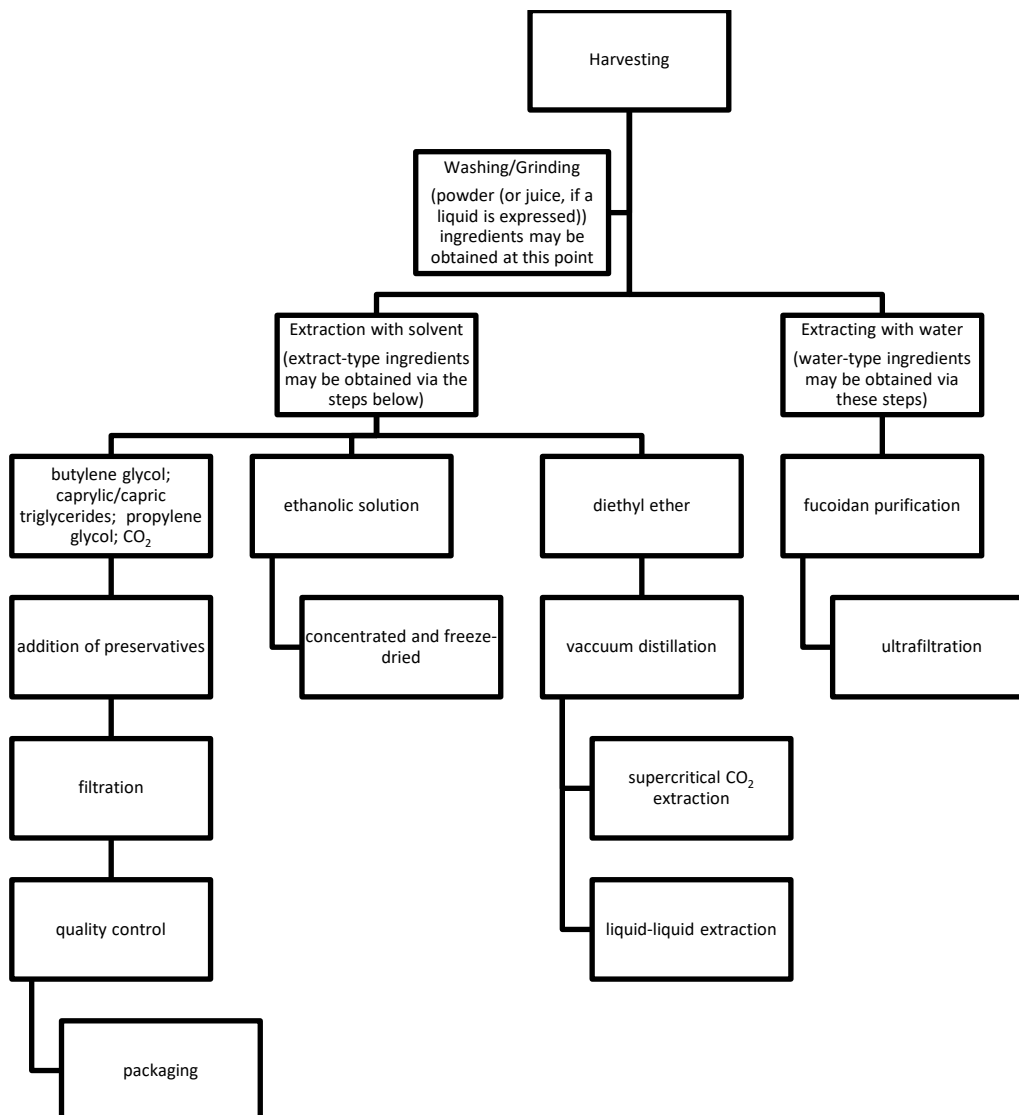


Figure 1. Overview of methods of manufacture for brown algae-derived ingredients. ^{1,9,24-33,33-57, CIR STAFF}

Composition

Some constituents and constituent groups that are found in brown algae, in general, are presented in Table 8; included therein are alkaloids, laminarins, pheromones, phytohormones, terpenoids, amino acids, betaines, and characteristic pigments such as chlorophyll *a* and *c*, β -carotene, fucoxanthin, and several other xanthophylls.⁵⁸ Constituents found in *Ascophyllum nodosum*, *Fucus vesiculosus*, and *Laminaria digitata* are listed in Table 9.

According to a study, Sargassacean brown algae species biosynthesize mainly meroditerpenes and linear diterpenes, whereas most compounds from the Dictyotacean species are cyclic diterpenoids, sesquiterpenes, and various types of meroterpenes.⁵⁹ Algae of the family Sargassaceae are among the most prolific in terms of terpene yield. In the genera *Cystoseira*, *Sargassum*, and *Halidrys*, meroditerpenoids constitute the most common metabolites. In the genus *Cystoseira*, meroditerpenoids could be classified into specific groups dependent upon the structure of their diterpene side chain: linear, monocyclic, bicyclic, or rearranged. The organic extracts of *Cystoseira amentacea* var. *stricta* contain high amounts of methoxybifurcarenone.

Sterols are also found in brown algae.^{60,61} Sterols reported to be in *Cystoseira tamariscifolia*, *Fucus spiralis*, and *Sargassum vulgare* are listed in Table 10.

Methanol, hexane, and chloroform extracts from *Cystoseira compressa* were examined for flavonoid and phenolic content.⁶² The flavonoid content of the methanol, hexane, and chloroform extract, were 0.291 ± 0.02 , 0.88 ± 0.07 , and 0.804 ± 0.07 mg/g, respectively. The phenolic content of hexane (1.541 ± 0.09 mg/g) was considerably higher than the phenolic content of the methanol (0.161 ± 0.08 mg/g) and chloroform (0.45 ± 0.04 mg/g) extracts.

Constituents of ethanolic extracts of *Fucus spiralis* and *Sargassum vulgare* are presented in Table 11. The constituent with the highest concentration in both extracts is vaccenic acid (21,690 and 2848 ppm, respectively).⁶³

Approximately 0.64 – 1.99 grams of polyphenols can be found in *Himanthalia elongata* extract.⁶⁴ In addition, phlorotannins can also be found in this extract (0.2 % dry weight). These include fucols, diphloroethol, and several fucophloroethols. Polyphenols are also found in *Undaria pinnatifida* extract in amounts of 0.08 – 0.60 g/ 100 g extract. Fucoidans extracted from the sporophylls of *Undaria pinnatifida* show a higher sulfate and l-fucose content than other fucoidans. The concentration of polyphenols in an aqueous extract of *Halidrys siliquosa* was reported to be 0.16 %.⁶⁵ The total protein and mineral content present in *Halidrys siliquosa* is approximately 9.6 and 11.19%, respectively.

The composition of a water/propylene glycol extract of *Laminaria japonica* is provided in Table 12.⁵⁶ The compositions of extracts of *Laminaria japonica*⁵⁷ that are produced via enzyme hydrolysis are presented in Table 13.

The specifications for an alcohol extract of *Ecklonia cava*, as a food/dietary supplement, include a combined phlorotannin content of $90.0 \pm 5.0\%$; the content of dieckol, a specific phlorotannin, is 6.6% to 9.9% (Table 14).⁹ The extract is to contain no insoluble substances, and it is reported to contain calcium (4800 ± 400 mg/kg), magnesium (1300 mg/kg), potassium (700 ± 200 mg/kg), and iodine (220 ± 40 mg/kg).

An *Undaria pinnatifida* extract rich in fucoidan was characterized as having 27% uronic acid, 53% monosaccharides, and 7.4% sulfate.⁶⁶ Major monosaccharides included 54% fucose and 35% galactose. The minor monosaccharides were 3% rhamnose, 4% arabinose, and 1% xylose, glucose, and mannose.

A desalinated *Undaria pinnatifida* powder was reported to consist of 532 mg/g dietary fiber, mostly in the form of alginates, and 209 mg/g protein.⁶⁷ The composition profile is presented in Table 15.

A study was performed to determine the flavonoid content of four species of brown algae.⁶⁸ Results of this study are presented in Table 16.

Impurities/Constituents of Concern

Possible fragrance allergens listed in Annex III of EU Cosmetic Regulation (EC) No. 1223/2009 that were analyzed in trade name mixtures containing relevant brown algae-derived ingredients can be found in Table 17.

Arsenic, Iodine, and Heavy Metals

Arsenic, usually in the form of arsenosugars, is a natural constituent of some brown algae, including *Ecklonia radiata*, *Laminaria japonica*, and *Sargassum fusiforme*.^{10,11,20,57,69} The amount of arsenic is inconsistent due to varied uptake of inorganic arsenic by brown algae varieties and the influence of external factors (e.g., temperature, season, and pH). A trade name mixture containing 4.7% Ascophyllum Nodosum Extract in 94.5% water was reported to have ≤ 2 ppm arsenic.⁷⁰ The amounts of arsenic that have been measured in 9 brown algae are presented in Table 18. The different arsenic-containing compounds found in four brown algae species are presented in Table 19. A comparison of the amount of arsenic found in *Laminaria japonica* and a *Laminaria japonica* extract (equivalence to cosmetic ingredients not confirmed) is presented in Table 20.

Brown algae, in general, exhibit an affinity for heavy metals, which are believed to be absorbed from the water column.^{58,71} Heavy metal concentrations in algae are strongly dependent on environmental parameters of the sampling sites (e.g., salinity, temperature, pH, light, nutrient concentrations, oxygen, etc.) and the structural differences among the algae. These seaweeds also absorb heavy metals from the sediment.^{72,73} A trade name mixture containing 4.7% Ascophyllum Nodosum Extract in 94.5% water was reported to have ≤ 20 ppm heavy metals.⁷⁰ An overview of the amount of heavy metals found in brown algae species is provided in Table 21. Information regarding heavy metal impurities in trade name mixtures containing brown algae can be found in Table 22.

An edible, phlorotannin-rich, ethanol extract of *Ecklonia cava* has specifications issued by the European Food Safety Authority (EFSA).⁹ According to the Commission, this extract must contain < 3 mg/kg lead, < 0.1 mg/kg mercury, < 3 mg/kg cadmium, < 25 mg/kg arsenic, and 150 - 650 mg/kg iodine.

Phthalates

Dibutyl phthalate (DBP) and di-(2-ethylhexyl) phthalate (DEHP) were shown to occur naturally in *Laminaria japonica*.⁷⁴ These phthalates were also present in *Undaria pinnatifida*.

USE

Cosmetic

The safety of the cosmetic ingredients included in this assessment is evaluated based on data received from the US Food and Drug Administration (FDA) and the cosmetic industry on the expected use of these ingredients in cosmetics. Use frequencies of individual ingredients in cosmetics are collected from manufacturers and reported by cosmetic product category in the FDA Voluntary Cosmetic Registration Program (VCRP) database. Use concentration data are submitted by the cosmetic industry in response to surveys conducted by the Personal Care Products Council (Council), of maximum

reported use concentration by product category.

According to VCRP data received in 2019, *Laminaria Digitata* Extract is reported to be used in 310 formulations (229 in leave-on formulations, 74 in rinse-off formulations, and 7 diluted for the bath; Table 23).⁷⁵ *Fucus Vesiculosus* Extract is reported to be used in 291 formulations, *Macrocystis Pyrifera* (Kelp) Extract in 199 formulations, and *Ascophyllum Nodosum* Extract is used in 140 formulations. *Laminaria Saccharina* Extract is reported to be used in 136 formulations. All other in-use ingredients are reported to be used in 100 formulations or fewer.

Ascophyllum Nodosum Extract was reported in the VCRP as *Ascophyllum Nodosum* (Seaweed) Extract and *Fucus Vesiculosus* Extract was reported as *Fucus Vesiculosus* (Bladderwrack) Extract. *Laminaria Saccharina* Extract is reported in the VCRP as *Saccharina Latissima* (Kelp) Extract; the accepted scientific name for *Laminaria saccharina* is *Saccharina latissima*.

The results of the concentration of use surveys conducted by the Council in 2015 and 2016 indicate *Laminaria Digitata* Powder has the highest reported maximum concentration of use; it is used at up to 40% in face and neck formulations.^{76,77} *Macrocystis Pyrifera* (Kelp) Extract is reported to be used at up to 36.4% in eye lotions. The other ingredients are reported to be used at 6% or less.

In some cases, reports of uses were received in the VCRP, but concentration of use data were not provided. For example, *Ascophyllum Nodosum* Powder is reported to be used in 4 cosmetic formulations, but no use concentration data were reported. In other cases, no uses were reported in the VCRP, but concentration of use data were reported in the industry survey; *Fucus Vesiculosus* had no reported uses in the VCRP, but a use concentration in shampoos, moisturizing formulations, and suntan formulations was provided in the industry survey. Therefore, it should be presumed there is at least one use in every category for which a concentration is reported. The ingredients not in use according to 2019 VCRP data and the 2015 and 2016 Council surveys are listed in Table 24.

Several of these ingredients are used in formulations that are used near the eye (e.g., *Macrocystis Pyrifera* (Kelp) Extract at up to 36.4% in eye lotion and *Fucus Vesiculosus* Extract in mascara at up to 5%), incidentally ingested (e.g., *Macrocystis Pyrifera* (Kelp) Extract in lipsticks at up to 0.079%), and in formulations that come in contact with mucous membranes (e.g., *Fucus Vesiculosus* Extract and *Laminaria Digitata* Extract at up to 5% in bubble baths and *Laminaria Japonica* Extract and *Macrocystis Pyrifera* (Kelp) Extract at up to 5% in bath oils, tablets and salts).

Additionally, some of the brown algae-derived ingredients are used in cosmetic sprays and could possibly be inhaled; for example, *Macrocystis Pyrifera* (Kelp) Extract is reported to be used at up to 0.79% in spray face and neck products. In practice, 95% to 99% of the droplets/particles released from cosmetic sprays have aerodynamic equivalent diameters > 10 µm, with propellant sprays yielding a greater fraction of droplets/particles < 10 µm compared with pump sprays.^{78,79} Therefore, most droplets/particles incidentally inhaled from cosmetic sprays would be deposited in the nasopharyngeal and thoracic regions of the respiratory tract and would not be respirable (i.e., they would not enter the lungs) to any appreciable amount.^{80,81} *Laminaria Japonica* Extract and *Macrocystis Pyrifera* (Kelp) Extract were reported to be used in face powders at concentrations up to 0.0035%. Conservative estimates of inhalation exposures to respirable particles during the use of loose-powder cosmetic products are 400- to 1000-fold less than protective regulatory and guidance limits for inert airborne respirable particles in the workplace.⁸²⁻⁸⁴

None of the brown algae-derived ingredients named in this report are restricted from use in any way under the rules governing cosmetic products in the European Union.⁸⁵

Non-Cosmetic

Brown seaweeds are consumed around the world and come mostly, but not exclusively from the *Laminaria*, *Undaria*, and *Hizikia* genus.¹⁶ According to the US FDA, brown algae (i.e., several species of seaweeds that are harvested principally in coastal waters of the northern Atlantic and Pacific oceans) are direct food substances that are GRAS for human consumption for use as flavor enhancers and flavor adjuvants, when the maximum level in food does not exceed the current good manufacturing practice (cGMP). [21CFR184.1120] “Kelp” (the dehydrated, ground product prepared from *Macrocystis pyrifera*, *Laminaria digitata*, *Laminaria saccharina*, and *Laminaria cloustoni*) is approved as a food additive for direct addition to food for human consumption as a source of iodine or as a dietary supplement. [21CFR172.365] An overview of the species of brown algae that are GRAS in the US can be seen in Table 25. In New Zealand, Japan and other Asian countries, dried sea kelp is a common food; the exact species of kelp used varies according to location.¹⁶ The EFSA NDA Panel concluded that an alcohol extract of *Ecklonia cava* is safe for the use in food supplements at a maximum intake level of 163 mg/day for adolescents from 12 to 14 years of age, 230 mg/day for adolescents above 14 years of age, and 263 mg/day for adults.⁹ In addition, a listing of brown algae species that are frequently ingested by humans is provided in Table 26. Several genera of edible brown algae include *Alaria*, *Himantalia*, *Laminaria*, *Saccharina*, *Undaria*, *Ascophyllum*, *Fucus*, *Sargassum*, *Hizikia*, *Dictyotales*, and *Eisenia*.⁸⁶

In France, some varieties of seaweed have been authorized for use as vegetables and condiments.⁸⁷ These include *Ascophyllum nodosum*, *Fucus vesiculosus*, *Fucus serratus*, *Himantalia elongata*, *Undaria pinnatifida*, *Laminaria digitata*, *Laminaria saccharina*, *Laminaria japonica*, and *Alaria esculenta*. These algae, when used in this manner, must not exceed certain levels of toxic minerals (≤ 3 mg/kg arsenic, ≤ 0.5 mg/kg cadmium, ≤ 0.1 mg/kg mercury, ≤ 5 mg/kg lead, ≤ 5 mg/kg tin, and ≤ 2000 mg/kg iodine). *Cystoseira baccata*, *Cystoseira compressa*, and *Cystoseira tamariscifolia* are edible brown algae species found in Portugal.⁸⁸

In animal drugs, feeds, and related products, brown algae (kelp; *Laminaria* spp. and *Nereocystis* spp.) are GRAS as natural substances [21CFR582.30] and as solvent-free natural extractives [21CFR582.40] used in conjunction with spices and other natural seasonings and flavorings.

In the US, “kelp” is present in OTC dietary supplements for weight loss. [21CFR310.545] However, there are inadequate data to establish a general recognition of the safety and effectiveness of this ingredient for that specified use. Several other sources refer to the use of *Fucus vesiculosus* for weight loss.^{89,90}

Pastes of seaweed, made by cold grinding or freeze crushing, are used in thalassotherapy, in which the pastes are applied to the body and then warmed under infrared radiation.¹⁶ This treatment, in conjunction with seawater hydrotherapy, is said to provide relief for rheumatism and osteoporosis. In folk medicine, preparations of *Fucus vesiculosus* are used to treat hypothyroidism, iodine deficiency, arteriosclerosis, digestive disorders, menstrual abnormalities, cellulite, and sprains.^{89,91} In herbal folk medicine, *Laminaria hyperborea* is used for thyroid regulation, and *Macrocystis Pyrifera* is used to treat thyroid conditions, anemia in pregnancy, and hypertension, for bringing about weight loss, and as an immunity booster.⁸⁹

Brown algae have been used as fertilizers and soil conditioners (*Ascophyllum*, *Sargassum*, *Ecklonia*, and *Fucus* species), animal feed for sheep, cattle, horses, pigs, and chickens (*Alaria esculenta*, and *Ascophyllum* and *Laminaria* species), feed and feed binder for fish and abalone (*Macrocystis pyrifera*), and biomass fuel (*Macrocystis pyrifera*), and they have been used for waste water/effluent treatment and removal of heavy metals (*Sargassum*, *Laminaria*, and *Ecklonia* species).^{16,58} Brown algae are used as biomonitors for heavy metal pollution in estuarine and coastal waters worldwide, and to evaluate the quality of their surrounding environment.⁷¹

TOXICOKINETIC STUDIES

Obtaining data on the toxicokinetics of uncharacterized, complex mixtures would be impractical, as is the case with many botanical ingredients. No toxicokinetics studies were discovered in the published literature, and no unpublished data were submitted.

TOXICOLOGICAL STUDIES

Acute Toxicity Studies

No acute dermal or inhalation toxicity studies were discovered in the published literature, and no unpublished data were submitted. Acute oral toxicity studies summarized below are presented in Table 27.

Oral

No mortality was observed when 5 Sprague Dawley rats/sex were given 2000 mg/kg/bw of a test substance consisting of hydroglycolic solution with 3% Agarum Cribosum Extract (method of oral administration was not stated).⁹² The LD₅₀ was > 2000 mg/kg when Sprague-Dawley rats were dosed with Ascophyllum Nodosum Extract. No other details regarding this study were provided.⁹³ Cystoseira Compressa Extract was not toxic to mice when given a single dose of up to 2000 mg/kg by gavage.⁶² No animals died when Sprague Dawley rats (10/sex) were given 2000 mg/kg Ecklonia Cava Extract (alcohol extract) by gavage.⁹ Similarly, no abnormalities were seen when Ecklonia Cava Extract (enzyme extract; 3000 mg) was given to SD rats (5/sex) or Beagle dogs (2/sex) by oral gavage.⁹⁴ The oral LD₅₀s of two Fucus Vesiculosus Extracts were 1000 and 500 mg/kg for male mice and between 1000 and 2000 mg/kg and < 750 mg/kg for female mice.⁹⁵ In rats (sex not stated), the oral LD₅₀s of two Fucus Vesiculosus Extracts were between 1000 and 2000 mg/kg for one extract and > 2000 mg/kg for the second extract.⁹⁵ The oral LD₅₀ of rats given 20% of a test substance containing Laminaria Digitata Extract (≤ 10%), artemisia vulgaris extract (≤ 10%), and phenoxyethanol (0.8%), in water, was > 5000 mg/kg.⁹⁶ Sargassum Fulvellum Extract and Sargassum Thunbergii Extract were not toxic to mice that were given a single dose of 5000 mg in 10 mL Tween-80 via gavage.⁵⁵

Short-Term, Subchronic, and Chronic Toxicity Studies

No repeated dose dermal or inhalation toxicity studies were discovered in the published literature, and no unpublished data were submitted. Short-term, subchronic, and chronic oral toxicity studies summarized below are presented in Table 28.

Oral

Ascophyllum Nodosum was not toxic when it was fed to pigs at up to 10% via feed for 23 days, or to rats at up to 15% in the diet for 4 weeks.^{50,97} Vomiting was the only adverse effect when Ecklonia Cava Extract in capsules was orally administered (in increasing amounts up to 1000 mg/kg over 8 days) to dogs.⁹ Ecklonia Cava Extract was not toxic to rats dosed with up to 3000 mg/kg via oral gavage once daily in rats, and twice daily in dogs, for 13 weeks.^{9,94} An enzyme extract of Ecklonia Cava Extract (starting at doses of 2000 mg/kg) administered by gavage for 2 weeks caused reduced ovary and brain weights in female rats.⁹⁴ Hepatic effects in rats were observed when animals were dosed with 2000 mg/kg/day via gavage of an alcohol Ecklonia Cava Extract for 4 weeks.⁹ While consuming high-fat diets, there were no adverse effects caused by alcohol Ecklonia Cava Extract when mice were given doses of up to 5 mg/kg/day via gavage for 4 weeks.⁹⁸ When rats were dosed with the same extract at doses of 1500 mg/kg/day for 13 weeks, there were also decreases in body weight gain and organ weights (the hepatic effects resolved after 4 weeks recovery).⁹

Increased liver weights were apparent when two ethanol *Fucus Vesiculosus* Extracts (starting at doses of 200 mg/kg/day) were administered by gavage for 4 weeks in male rats.⁹⁵ No treatment-related effects were noted in females. An ethanol *Laminaria Japonica* Extract (up to 400 mg/kg) administered by gavage for 6 weeks caused decreased body weight gain, fat-pad weights, and serum and hepatic lipid levels in rats.⁵¹

In rats, doses of 1200 to 4000 mg/kg *Cladosiphon Okamura* Extract given once a day for 3 months via gavage caused a dose-dependent increase in clotting time and decrease in alkaline phosphatase (ALP) that was not observed with lower doses.⁵² There were no other adverse effects reported.

Laminaria Japonica Powder (up to 5%) was incorporated in the feed of mice from the age of 7 weeks until death. There were no dose-dependent effects on the lifespan of mice.⁵³ *Undaria Pinnatifida* Extract administered via drinking water (1.5 g in 1000 mL water) did not cause any toxic effects in rats when administered for 32 weeks.⁹⁹ *Undaria Pinnatifida* Powder (0.1, 1, or 5%) was given to 5 female SD rats for 36 weeks via diet.¹⁰⁰ No adverse effects were reported.

DEVELOPMENTAL AND REPRODUCTIVE TOXICITY (DART) STUDIES

No DART studies were discovered in the published literature, and no unpublished data were submitted.

GENOTOXICITY STUDIES

The in vitro and in vivo genotoxicity studies summarized below are detailed in Table 29.

In Vitro

Ascophyllum Nodosum Extract was not genotoxic in two Ames assays (up to 5000 µg/plate), a mammalian cell gene mutation test (up to 500 µg/mL), or in chromosomal aberration assays (up to 5 mg/mL; human lymphocytes); in a mammalian cell gene mutation test, *Ascophyllum Nodosum* Extract was genotoxic to Chinese hamster ovary (CHO) cells starting at 1500 µg/mL.^{6,93} An Ames test was performed according to the Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development (OECD) test guideline (TG) 471 on a trade name mixture containing 4.7% *Ascophyllum Nodosum* Extract in 94.5% water.⁷⁰ No mutagenic activity was reported. *Cystoseira Compressa* Extract was not mutagenic in an Ames assay performed with and without metabolic activation at up to 5 mg/plate.⁶² An Ames test was performed with and without metabolic activation using a trade name mixture consisting of 1 - 3% *Cystoseira Compressa* Extract in amilopectin glycerine water (up to 51.95 mg/plate; *Salmonella typhimurium*).¹⁰¹ *Ecklonia Cava* Extract was not genotoxic in Ames assays (up to 5000 µg/plate) or chromosomal aberration assays (up to 350 µg/plate).⁹⁴ *Halidrys Siliquosa* Extract was non-mutagenic in an Ames assay, performed according to OECD TG 471, at up to 5 µL/plate.⁶⁵ Another Ames assay performed according to OECD TG 471 resulted in negative results when testing the genotoxic potential of a mixture consisting of *Fucus Spiralis* Extract (12%), tetraselmis chui extract (8%), and water (80%) (up to 5 µL/plate).¹⁰² Aqueous *Fucus Vesiculosus* Extract was not genotoxic in a chromosomal aberration assay (up to 1 mg/mL; human peripheral lymphocytes) or a comet assay (up to 1 mg/mL; human peripheral lymphocytes).¹⁰³ *Laminaria digitata* was non-mutagenic in an assay performed with and without metabolic activation (concentrations not stated).¹⁰⁴ A trade name mixture containing *Laminaria Saccharina* Extract in sea water and methylpropanediol was non-mutagenic in an Ames assay (up to 5000 µg/plate).¹⁰⁵ *Macrocystis Pyrifera* (Kelp) Extract was non-mutagenic in an Ames assay (1 mL test substance in 10 mL 0.9% sodium chloride; concentration of extract was approximately 4%).¹⁰⁶ A trade name mixture containing 24% *Undaria Pinnatifida* Cell Culture Extract was not mutagenic in a bacterial reverse mutation assay (up to 5000 µg/plate).¹⁰⁷ No genotoxicity was reported in a chemiluminescent 3D assay using water (52%) and *Cystoseira Amentacea/ Caespitosa/Brachycarpa* Extract (48%) as the test substance at up to 10%.¹⁰⁸ The test system for this study was not reported.

In Vivo

Ecklonia Cava Extract was not genotoxic in micronucleus assays up to 3000 mg/kg using male CD1 mice. Test substances were administered via gavage.^{9,94}

CARCINOGENICITY STUDIES

No carcinogenicity studies were discovered in the published literature, and no unpublished data were submitted.

Tumor Promotion

Tumor promotion studies summarized below are detailed in Table 30. The brown algae-derived ingredients that were tested were not tumor promoters; instead, decreases in the number, incidence, and size of tumors in rats and mice were observed.

Dermal

Mice were treated dermally with a single dose of 7,12-dimethylbenz[a]anthracene (DMBA; a carcinogen) followed by biweekly treatments for fifteen weeks with 12-*O*-tetradecanoylphorbol-13-acetate (TPA; a tumor promoter) or *Undaria Pinnatifida* Extract (1 mg).¹⁰⁹ The mice treated with *Undaria Pinnatifida* Extract had a delayed appearance of skin tumors (14 vs 8 weeks) and fewer tumors (average 0.2 vs 3.7) compared to the TPA-treated mice.

Oral

Rats injected with azoxymethane (AOM; a carcinogen) and then fed a diet containing *Hizikia Fusiforme* Extract

(2% and 6%) had a reduced number of colorectal tumors (21 vs 58) compared to rats injected with AOM and fed a normal diet.¹¹⁰ A *Saccharina angustata* powder (5%; inference for Saccharina Angustata Extract) in feed delayed the appearance and reduced the incidences of mammary tumors in rats orally administered DMBA.¹¹¹

Rats administered *N*-methyl-*N'*-nitro-*N*-nitrosoguanidine (MNNG; a carcinogen) followed by Sargassum Pallidum Extract (0, 400, 600 and 800 mg/kg/day) in drinking water for 8 weeks had decreased inflammatory responses; serum IL-6, IL-1 β , and TNF- α levels and concentration of serum and gastric mucosa malondialdehyde (MDA; an oxidant) were decreased in a dose-dependent manner.¹¹² In rats administered Undaria Pinnatifida Powder (0, 1.0% or 5.0% in feed) for 8 weeks after oral administration of DMBA, the mean combined weight of all mammary tumors of each rat in treatment groups was lower than that in the control group (approximately 7 vs 20 g).¹⁰⁰ Undaria Pinnatifida Extract (100% as drinking water) for 32 weeks reduced the incidence of mammary tumors (22% vs 100%) after female rats were orally administered DMBA.⁹⁹

OTHER RELEVANT STUDIES

Endocrine Effects

In Vitro

Fucus vesiculosus extract

Human granulosa cells (obtained from 8 women) were treated with a water:ethanol (1:1) *Fucus vesiculosus* extract (25, 50, or 75 μ mol/l) for 9 days.¹¹³ Ethanol (50%) served as the vehicle control. At 50 and 75 μ mol/l, the extract significantly reduced 17- β -estradiol levels in human granulosa cells and also competed with estradiol (E2) and progesterone for binding to their receptors.

Affinity of 1 or more components of a water:ethanol (1:1) *Fucus vesiculosus* extract for estrogen receptor- α (ER α), ER β , and progesterone receptor (PR)-B was determined by radiometric competitive binding assays.¹¹³ Dried extract (0.5, 5, or 50 μ mol/l final concentration) was re-solubilized in dimethyl sulfoxide and combined with ER α or ER β and 0.5 nmol/l estradiol. Non-specific binding was estimated in the presence of 1 μ mol/l diethylstilbesterol. To test this receptor binding, the extract was incubated with PR-B and 1.4 nmol/l radiolabeled progesterone. Non-specific binding was estimated in the presence of 1 μ mol/l progesterone. The extract competed for and bound to ER α (IC₅₀ = 42.2 μ mol/l), ER β (IC₅₀ = 31.8 μ mol/l), and PR-B (IC₅₀ = 31.8 μ mol/l), with a slightly greater affinity for ER β . The inhibition of progesterone production was less prominent, and there was no concentration-response relationship. In contrast, there was a concentration-dependent occupancy of the estrogen and progesterone receptors. Compounds found in *Fucus vesiculosus* could act as estradiol antagonists via ligand competition for ER α or ER β .

In competitive radio-ligand binding assays, aromatase activity was estimated by measuring the incorporation of tritium from androstenedione into water in the presence or absence of a *Fucus vesiculosus* extract (10, 50, or 100 μ mol/L).¹¹³ Aromatase activity following treatment of human luteinized granulosa cells (hLGCs) with this extract did not change.

A chemically activated luciferase reporter (CALUX[®]) assay was used to determine the effect of an aqueous *Fucus vesiculosus* extract on activation of the ER.¹¹⁴ Aromatase enzymatic activity was measured to determine the potential effect of this extract on E2 biosynthesis. In co-treatments with E2, this extract (2%) reduced the activation of the luciferase reporter by up to 50%, exhibiting ER antagonistic effects. The effect of this extract (0 to 2%) on aromatase activity was measured using recombinant human CYP19 enzymatic hydrolysis of the fluorescent substrate, 7-methoxy-4-trifluoromethyl coumarin, in a 96-well plate. Ketoconazole was used as the positive marker of aromatase inhibition. This extract inhibited aromatase activity (IC₅₀ 2.0%). ER-dependent and -independent cancer cell lines showed significantly decreased viability with increasing *Fucus vesiculosus* extract concentrations; altered morphological features suggested apoptosis and autophagy. The cell line-specific sensitivity suggests that *Fucus vesiculosus* extract was not toxic at up to 2%, but instead induces cell death through modulated pathways.

Animal

Fucus vesiculosus powder

Female Sprague-Dawley rats (n = 8), that had two confirmed normal estrous cycles, were administered a *Fucus vesiculosus* powder (0, 175, or 350 mg/kg/day) on an apple wedge daily for 4 weeks.¹¹³ Vaginal smears were obtained and daily logs were maintained to monitor estrous cycling. No adverse effects were observed during the course of the experiment. Administration of this powder resulted in a statistically-significant, dose-dependent increase in the length of the estrous cycle in the treated rats. In the control group, the mean number of days of the estrous cycle was 4.3 \pm 0.96 days compared to 5.4 \pm 1.7 days in the low-dose group and 5.9 \pm 1.9 days in the high-dose group. Treatment with this powder caused an overall 100% increase in the mean length of the diestrus phase of the estrous cycle. The mean number of days in diestrus was 0.97 \pm 0.22 among the controls compared to 1.4 \pm 0.54 in the low-dose group and 2.1 \pm 0.88 days in the high-dose group. Treatment had no significant effect on the number of days in estrus, proestrus, or metestrus during the mean estrous cycle. After treatment was stopped, five rats stopped normal estrous cycling; one remained in estrus and four in diestrus.

Blood samples were collected from female Sprague-Dawley rats (n = 19) before treatment with dried *Fucus vesiculosus* powder, and at 2 and 4 weeks of the oral administration of this powder (0 or 175 mg/kg/d) on apple wedges.¹¹³ At 2 weeks, mean serum 17 β -estradiol levels were reduced from 48.9 \pm 4.5 to 40.2 \pm 3.2 ng/l and, after 4 weeks, reduced the

levels from baseline to 36.7 ± 2.2 ng/l (25% decrease), suggesting an effect of dosing over time. Serum progesterone levels between controls and the treatment groups did not differ.

Blood samples were collected from female Sprague-Dawley rats ($n = 8$), that had naturally high circulating estradiol levels (≥ 50 µg/l), before, and after 1 week of the oral administration of *Fucus vesiculosus* powder (350 mg/kg/day) on apple wedges.¹¹³ Median serum 17-β-estradiol levels decreased by 38%. The range in reduction of serum 17-β-estradiol levels in 6 of the rats was 25% to 58%, whereas 2 rats had levels similar to their baseline levels. Progesterone levels were not significantly affected following this treatment. This could be due to the fact that in the studies with rats the blood samples were collected in the morning, and in the morning the 17-β-estradiol levels were at their peak but the progesterone levels were not.

Photoprotection

Sargassum muticum

The effect of the ethyl acetate fraction of *Sargassum muticum* extract against cell death induced by mid-wavelength ultraviolet (UVB) radiation was studied.¹¹⁵ Cells were seeded in a 96-well plate at a concentration of 1×10^5 cells/mL. Sixteen hours after plating, 100 µg/mL of *Sargassum muticum* extract were added to the cells and exposed to UVB radiation at a dose of 150 mJ/cm². Cell viability was 61% in UVB (150 mJ/cm²) irradiated cells and 70% in UVB-irradiated cells treated with *Sargassum muticum* extract. Decreased numbers of apoptotic bodies as well as DNA fragmentation was apparent in cells co-exposed to *Sargassum muticum* extract and UVB, versus UVB exposure alone.

DERMAL IRRITATION AND SENSITIZATION STUDIES

The dermal irritation and sensitization studies summarized below are presented in Table 31.

Irritation

In Vitro

In vitro dermal irritation assays were performed on a mixture containing 24% Undaria Pinnatifida Cell Culture Extract in water; a mixture containing Laminaria Japonica (7%), Nereocystis Leutkeana (7%), Macrocystis Pyrifera Extract (7%), and pentaerythrityl tetraethylhexanoate; and a mixture containing Sargassum Filipendula Extract (1.3%), water (81.78%), sorbitol (14%), hypnea musciformis extract (1.4%), gellidiela acerosa extract (1.3%), methylparaben (0.2%), and propylparaben (0.2%).^{116,117,118} These trade name mixtures were considered to be non-irritating.

Animal

Ascophyllum Nodosum Extract (4.7%; aqueous), Laminaria Digitata Extract (0.5 %) with dipropylene glycol and water or water and sea salt, and Laminaria Digitata Extract (0.5 %) with artemisia vulgaris extract, phenoxyethanol, and water, were non-irritating in animal dermal irritation studies.^{6,54,96,93}

Human

Many human irritation studies were provided using test substances containing a brown algae ingredient, or combination of ingredients, along with other substances such as caprylic/capric triglycerides, butylene glycol, water, sea salt, propylene glycol, phenoxyethanol, panthenol, or dipropylene glycol. The majority of these studies resulted in negative results; however, irritation was seen in several studies after treatment with high concentrations or short periods of exposure. In a study using a trade name mixture consisting of Fucus Spiralis Extract (< 5%) in caprylic/capric triglycerides as the test substance, slight irritation was observed after 30 minutes, however, no irritation was reported after 24 hours.¹¹⁹ A trade name mixture containing 20% Himanthalia Elongata Extract, 37% Undaria Pinnatifida Extract, and 43% water, was considered to be very slightly irritating to human skin.⁶⁴ When a test substance consisting of Laminaria Digitata Extract (1.5 - 2.5%) in water and propylene glycol was applied to the skin, moderate irritation was observed after 30 minutes, and slight irritation was observed after 24 hours.¹²⁰ In a different study, Laminaria Saccharina Extract (1 - 3%) in water and propylene glycol was applied at concentrations of 8, 16, and 100% to 10 subjects.¹²¹ Slight irritation was observed at the 100% dose level, and no irritation was observed at the lower doses. When a trade name mixture containing Pelvetia Canaliculata Extract (1 - 3%) in propylene glycol and water was applied to the skin, moderate irritation was noted after 30 minutes, and slight irritation was noted after 24 hours.¹²² Similar results were observed when a trade name mixture consisting of Undaria Pinnatifida Extract (< 5%) in water and propylene glycol was applied to the skin of 12 subjects.¹²³ In a different study, the test substance (trade name mixture containing Pelvetia Canaliculata Extract and Laminaria Digitata Extract extracted in propylene glycol with panthenol (the amount of dry extract of both extracts combined is estimated to be 5.5 - 9.0%)) was applied to the skin of 10 subjects at concentrations of 5, 10, and 100%.¹²⁴ Mild irritation was observed at the 100% concentration, minimal irritation was observed at the 10% concentration, and no irritation was reported at the 5% concentration.

Sensitization

In Vitro

An ARE-Nfr2 Luciferase Test utilizing human keratinocyte cells at concentrations up to 2000 µM was performed to study the sensitization potential of Undaria Pinnatifida Cell Culture Extract (24%).¹²⁵ The test substance was non-sensitizing. A direct peptide reactivity assay (DPRA) performed testing the sensitizing potential of the same ingredient yielded negative

results.¹²⁶ An ARE-Nfr2 Luciferase Test was also performed on a trade name mixture containing Sargassum Filipendula Extract (1.3%), water (81.78%), sorbitol (14%), Hypnea Musciformis Extract (1.4%), gellidiela acerosa extract (1.3%), methylparaben (0.2%), and propylparaben (0.025%).¹²⁶ No sensitization potential was observed.

Animal

A guinea pig maximization test was performed according to OECD 406 guidelines on 18 male animals using a test substance consisting of 3% Agarum Cribrosum Extract in a hydroglycolic solution.⁹² No sensitization was observed. Ascophyllum Nodosum Extract (25% - 75%), was non-sensitizing when applied to the skin of 20 guinea pigs.⁹³ No sensitization was noted when a cream containing 0.0023% Cystoseira Amentacea/Caespitosa/Brachycarpa Extract was applied to 25 animals in a guinea pig maximization test.¹²⁷

Human

All in vivo sensitization studies performed on humans, evaluating various brown algae-derived ingredients (Alaria Esculenta Extract (0.5 - 2.5% and < 5%), Ascophyllum Nodosum Extract (0.5% - 75%), Cystoseira Baccata Extract (0.5 - 10%), Cystoseira Compressa Extract (1-3%), Cystoseira Tamariscifolia Extract (0.5 -10%), Dictyopteris Polypodioides Extract (0.5 - 10%), Fucus Spiralis (1 -3%), Fucus Vesiculosus Extract (5%), Halidrys Siliquosa Extract (48%), Halopteris Scoparia Extract (0.5 - 10%), Himanthalia Elongata Extract (0.2%), Macrocystis Pyrifera (Kelp) Extract (4%), Laminaria Digitata Extract (< 12%), Laminaria Ochroleuca Extract (<5%), Laminaria Saccharina Extract (< 3%), Pelvetia Canaliculata Extract (< 44%), Phyllacantha Fibrosa Extract (< 10%), Sphacelaria Scoparia Extract, Sargassum Filipendula Extract (1.2%), Sargassum Muticum Extract (0.076%), and Undaria Pinnatifida Extract (<5%)), were negative.^{54,65,96,106,119,127-132,132-146}

Phototoxicity

In Vitro

Ascophyllum Nodosum Extract

A phototoxicity study was performed according to OECD TG 432 (3T3 NRU phototoxicity test) using a trade name mixture containing 4.7% Ascophyllum Nodosum Extract in 94.5% water.⁷⁰ No additional details were provided. No phototoxic activity was reported.

OCULAR IRRITATION STUDIES

The studies summarized below are presented in Table 32.

In Vitro

Numerous HET-CAM tests were performed; almost all reported no or slight/mild irritation. Moderate irritation was also noted when a mixture of cosmetic products (Laminaria Ochroleuca Extract (5%), caprylic/capric triglycerides (94.75%), and tocopherols (0.25%)), was used in a HET-CAM assay.¹⁴⁷ Three ocular irritation assays performed using reconstructed cornea epithelium yielded negative results.

Animal

Ascophyllum nodosum extract (100 mg of the dried material) was mildly irritating when applied to the eyes of New Zealand White rabbits.⁶ In a different study performed according to OECD TG 405, Ascophyllum Nodosum Extract was slightly irritating.¹⁴⁸ A test substance (diluted to 22% in water; 0.1 mL) containing Laminaria Digitata Extract ($\leq 10\%$), artemisia vulgaris extract ($\leq 10\%$), phenoxyethanol (0.8%), and water, was non-irritating when placed in the eyes of New Zealand White rabbits.⁹⁶

Human

The ophthalmic irritation potential of an eye cream containing 0.076% Sargassum Muticum Extract was tested in 31 subjects, approximately 50% of which wore soft contact lenses.¹⁴⁹ The test material did not indicate a potential for ophthalmologic irritation and was considered safe for use by both contact and non-contact lens wearers.

CLINICAL STUDIES

Case Reports

Oral case reports regarding brown algae-derived supplements are presented in Table 33. Decreased platelet count and an increased amount of arsenic in the blood were noted in subjects taking kelp supplements.^{150,151}

Clinical Trials

Dermal

A gel formulation containing 1% of an aqueous extract of *Fucus vesiculosus* (0.2 mL) was tested in a double-blind, placebo-controlled experiment.⁴⁹ Female subjects (n = 10) applied the gel to one cheek at least twice per day (morning and evening) for 5 weeks. The same gel, without the extract, was applied to the other cheek. The skin was examined before the experiment began, daily, and after the experiment ended. There were no signs of erythema or edema during the experiment.

Oral

Oral clinical trials summarized below are presented in Table 34.

In a 2-week oral clinical trial in which an *Ascophyllum nodosum* powder (0.5g/d) was administered to healthy female subjects, median urinary iodine concentrations increased from 78 mg/l to 140 mg/l, and thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH) concentrations increased slightly, but remained within the normal range.¹⁵² There were no adverse events reported. Administration of an alcohol extract of *Ecklonia cava* (400 mg/d) to subjects with hypercholesterolaemia for 12 weeks did not have an effect on hematology, clinical chemistry, or urinalysis parameters; however, one instance (2.2%) each of nausea, dyspepsia, diarrhea, and alopecia were reported.^{9,153} A phlorotannin-rich extract of *Ecklonia cava* (0, 72, or 144 mg/d) was administered for 12 weeks to overweight patients in a randomized, double-blind study. Hematological and clinical chemistry did not reveal any adverse effects; the 144 mg/d group showed decreases in serum glucose and systolic blood pressure (SBP).⁹ No adverse effects were reported when Ecklonia Cava Extract (alcohol extract; 400 mg) was given to 40 overweight subjects for 12 weeks.²⁹ Administration of capsules containing a desalinated *Undaria pinnatifida* powder (average intake estimated to be 3.3 g/d) to hypertensive subjects for 8 weeks resulted in a decrease in the average SBP, diastolic blood pressure (DBP), and total cholesterol; adverse effects included two cases of indigestion and one case of diarrhea, both of which resolved quickly without treatment.⁶⁷

Three pre-menopausal women with irregular menstrual cycles were administered a *Fucus vesiculosus* powder.¹⁵⁴ Subject number 1 was 43 years old with hypermenorrhea, polymenorrhea, dysmenorrhea, luteal phase deficiency, and endometriosis. Subject number 2 was 42 years old with hypermenorrhea, polymenorrhea, and dysmenorrhea. Subject number 3 was 21 years old with hypermenorrhea, dysmenorrhea, and endometriosis. Menstrual cycles were tracked for three cycles and serum 17 β -estradiol and progesterone levels were measured before treatment started. Then the women were administered this powder in capsules (700 mg/d) for two menstrual cycles. Serum 17- β -estradiol and progesterone levels were measured again. Subject 2 stopped treatment at this point and subjects 1 and 3 continued treatment with a greater dose of this powder (1400 mg/day) for two more cycles. This powder increased the menstrual cycle length and reduced the days of menstruation in a dose-dependent manner (Table 35). In subject 1, the plasma estradiol levels were decreased (before: 626 \pm 91 pg/mL; low dose: 164 \pm 30 pg/mL; high dose: 92.5 \pm 3.5 pg/mL) and the progesterone levels were increased (before: 0.58 \pm 0.14 ng/mL; low-dose: 8.4 \pm 2.6 ng/mL; high-dose: 16.8 \pm 0.7 ng/mL).¹⁵⁴

SUMMARY

This is a review of the safety of 82 brown algae-derived ingredients. However, several of these ingredients may be equivalent according to accepted scientific names; accordingly, the number of distinct cosmetic ingredients is 74. The ingredients in this review are extracts, powders, juices, or waters derived from one or multiple species of brown algae and may be derived from the whole or a defined part of the seaweed. "Brown algae" is a common name for seaweeds of the class *Phaeophyceae*, which have an abundance of xanthophyll pigments and are a known source of alginate. The most frequently reported function of brown algae ingredients in cosmetics is as a skin-conditioning agent; other reported functions include absorbent, antioxidant, binder, hair conditioning agent, oxidizing agent, and viscosity increasing agent.

Extraction methods and solvents vary, depending on the desired composition of the final ingredient. Powders, however, are generally the dried algae pulverized by milling. Arsenic, usually in the form of arsenosugars, is a natural constituent of brown algae and the amount in harvested algae can be reduced by several methods. In addition to arsenic, brown algae exhibit an affinity for heavy metals and uptake is strongly dependent on environmental parameters.

According to VCRP data received in 2019, Laminaria Digitata Extract is reported to be used in 310 formulations (229 in leave-on formulations, 74 in rinse-off formulations, and 7 diluted for the bath; Table 23).⁷⁵ Fucus Vesiculosus Extract is reported to be used in 291 formulations, Macrocystis Pyrifera (Kelp) Extract in 199 formulations, and Ascophyllum Nodosum Extract is used in 140 formulations. The results of the concentration of use surveys conducted by the Council in 2015 and 2016 indicate Laminaria Digitata Powder has the highest reported maximum concentration of use; it is used at up to 40% in face and neck formulations. Macrocystis Pyrifera (Kelp) Extract is reported to be used at up to 36.4% in eye lotions. The rest of these ingredients are reported to be used at 6% or less.

According to the US FDA, brown algae (i.e., several species of seaweeds that are harvested principally in coastal waters of the northern Atlantic and Pacific oceans) are direct food substances that are GRAS for human consumption for use as flavor enhancers and flavor adjuvants, when the maximum level in food does not exceed the cGMP). "Kelp" (the dehydrated, ground product prepared from *Macrocystis pyrifera*, *Laminaria digitata*, *Laminaria saccharina*, and *Laminaria cloustoni*) is approved as a food additive for direct addition to food for human consumption as a source of iodine or as a dietary supplement. In animal drugs, feeds, and related products, brown algae (kelp; *Laminaria* spp. and *Nereocystis* spp.) are GRAS as natural substances and as solvent-free natural extractives used in conjunction with spices and other natural seasonings and flavorings.

Acute oral administration of brown algae extracts was not toxic to mice, rats, and dogs. No mortality was observed when 2000 mg/kg/bw of 3% Agarum Cribosium Extract in hydroglycolic solution was given to Sprague-Dawley rats. The LD₅₀ was reported to be > 2000 mg/kg when Sprague-Dawley rats were given Ascophyllum Nodosum extract. Cystoseira Compressa Extract was not toxic to mice up to 2000 mg/kg by gavage. Ecklonia Cava Extract was not toxic to rats and dogs up to 3000 mg/kg by gavage. The oral LD₅₀s of two different Fucus Vesiculosus Extracts were 500 mg/kg and greater for

mice and rats. Sargassum Fulvellum Extract and Sargassum Thunbergii Extract administered by gavage were not toxic to mice. The oral LD₅₀ of rats given 20% of a test substance containing Laminaria Digitata Extract ($\leq 10\%$), artemisia vulgaris extract ($\leq 10\%$), and phenoxyethanol (0.8%), in water, was > 5000 mg/kg.

In oral short-term and subchronic studies, there were some adverse effects observed. In rats, Cladosiphon Okamurae Extract (1200 to 4000 mg/kg by gavage) caused a dose-dependent increase in clotting time and decrease in ALP; there were no other adverse effects reported. An enzyme extract of Ecklonia Cava Extract (starting at 2000 mg/kg) administered by gavage for 2 weeks caused reduced ovary and brain weights in female rats. Hepatic effects in rats were observed when animals were treated with an alcohol Ecklonia Cava Extract at 2000 mg/kg/day for 4 weeks and at 1500 mg/kg/day for 13 weeks (the hepatic effects resolved after 4 weeks of recovery). There were increased liver weights in male rats treated with two ethanol Fucus Vesiculosus Extracts (starting at 200 mg/kg/day) administered by gavage for 4 weeks. Vomiting was the only adverse effect when Ecklonia Cava Extract capsules (in increasing amounts up to 1000 mg/kg over 8 days) were orally administered to dogs.

In other oral short-term and subchronic studies, there were no adverse effects observed. Ascophyllum Nodosum was not toxic to pigs for 23 days or to rats for 4 weeks administered in feed at up to 10% and 15%, respectively. While consuming high-fat diets, there were no adverse effects caused by alcohol Ecklonia Cava Extract (up to 5 mg/day) administered to mice by gavage daily for 4 weeks and an ethanol Laminaria Japonica Extract (up to 400 mg/kg) administered by gavage for 6 weeks caused decreased body weight gain, fat-pad weights, and serum and hepatic lipid levels in rats. An Ecklonia cava powder (up to 0.15%; inference for Ecklonia Cava Extract and Ecklonia Cava Water) administered in feed for 28 days was not toxic to weanling pigs.

In a chronic oral toxicity study, the NOAEL of a Laminaria Japonica Extract administered to rats by gavage for 6 months was 300 mg/kg/day. In females, a decrease in AST was observed starting at 300 mg/kg/day and, at 2500 mg/kg/day, there was decreased serum glucose concentration; all effects returned to baseline after a 1-month recovery. Laminaria Japonica Powder incorporated into feed did not affect the lifespan of mice at up to 5%. In rats, Undaria Pinnatifida Extract administered as drinking water at a concentration of 1.5 g/L for 32 weeks and incorporated into the feed (at up to 5%) for 36 weeks did not cause any toxic effects.

In genotoxicity assays of several of the brown algae-derived ingredients, all results were negative with the exception of an Ascophyllum Nodosum Extract in one mammalian cell gene mutation test in which the extract was genotoxic starting at 1500 $\mu\text{g/mL}$ in CHO cells. With metabolic activation, Ascophyllum Nodosum Extract was not genotoxic in CHO cells. Ascophyllum Nodosum Extract was not genotoxic in two Ames assays and a mammalian cell gene mutation test (up to 500 $\mu\text{g/mL}$), and in chromosome aberration assays (up to 5 mg/mL). Cystoseira Compressa Extract (up to 51.95 mg/plate) was not genotoxic in two Ames assays. Ecklonia Cava Extract was not genotoxic in Ames assays (up to 5000 $\mu\text{g/plate}$) and chromosome aberration assays (up to 350 $\mu\text{g/plate}$). Fucus Spiralis Extract in water and tetraselmis chui extract was non-genotoxic in an Ames assay (up to 5 $\mu\text{g/plate}$). Aqueous Fucus Vesiculosus Extract was not genotoxic in a chromosome aberration assay and a comet assay (up to 1 mg/mL). Halidrys Siliquosa Extract was non-mutagenic in an Ames assay (up to 5 $\mu\text{L/plate}$). Laminaria Japonica Extract (up to 5000 $\mu\text{g/plate}$) was not mutagenic in an Ames assay and a chromosome aberration assay. Macrocystis Pyrifera (Kelp) Extract was non-mutagenic in an Ames assay (1 mL test substance in 10 mL 0.9% sodium chloride; concentration of extract not provided). Undaria Pinnatifida Extract was not genotoxic in Ames assays and chromosome aberration assays (up to 5000 $\mu\text{g/mL}$). In a micronucleus assay, Ecklonia Cava Extract (up to 3000 mg/kg), was not genotoxic. An Ames test performed using a trade name mixture containing Laminaria Saccharina Extract in sea water and methylpropandiol at up to 5000 $\mu\text{g/plate}$ resulted in negative results. A different Ames test was performed according to OECD TG 471 using a trade name mixture containing 4.7% Ascophyllum Nodosum Extract in 94.5% water. No mutagenic activity was reported. In a bacterial reverse mutation assay performed according to OECD TG 471, a trade name mixture containing 24% Undaria Pinnatifida Extract was not mutagenic (up to 5000 $\mu\text{g/plate}$). No genotoxicity was reported in a chemiluminescent 3D assay using water 52% and Cystoseira Amentacea/Caespitosa/ Brachycarpa Extract (48%) as the test substance.

None of the orally or dermally administered brown algae-derived ingredients tested (e.g., Hizikia Fusiforme Extract, Saccharina Angustata Extract (inference from Saccharina angustata powder), Undaria Pinnatifida Extract, and Undaria Pinnatifida Powder) were tumor (mammary and colorectal) promoters; instead, decreases in the number, incidence, and/or size of tumors in rats were reported. Rats administered MNNG followed by 8 weeks of Sargassum Pallidum Extract (400 to 800 mg/kg/day) in drinking water exhibited decreased inflammatory responses.

A Fucus vesiculosus extract exhibited estrogen effects in several in vitro studies. This extract (50 and 75 $\mu\text{mol/l}$) reduced 17- β -estradiol levels in human granulosa cells and also competed with estradiol and progesterone for binding to the respective receptors. In another study, a Fucus vesiculosus extract competed for, and bound to, ER α (IC₅₀ = 42.2 $\mu\text{mol/l}$), ER β (IC₅₀ = 31.8 $\mu\text{mol/l}$), and PR-B (IC₅₀ = 31.8 $\mu\text{mol/l}$), with a slightly higher affinity for ER β . In co-treatments with E2 (12.5 pM; EC₅₀), a Fucus vesiculosus extract (2%) reduced the activation of the luciferase reporter by up to 50%, exhibiting ER antagonistic effects. ER-dependent and -independent cancer cell lines showed significantly decreased viability with increasing test material concentrations. The cell line-specific sensitivity suggests that Fucus vesiculosus extract was not toxic at up to 2%, but instead induces cell death through modulated pathways. In one study, aromatase activity following treatment of hLGCs with a Fucus vesiculosus extract (10 to 100 $\mu\text{mol/L}$) did not change.

In *in vivo* studies, a *Fucus vesiculosus* powder exhibited estrogenic effects. Oral administration (175 and 350 mg/kg/day) for 4 weeks resulted in a dose-dependent increase in the length of the estrous cycle and an overall 100% increase in the mean length of the diestrus phase of the estrous cycle in the treated rats. Mean serum 17- β -estradiol levels were reduced at 2 weeks and further reduced at 4 weeks. Female rats that had naturally high circulating estradiol had reduced serum 17- β -estradiol (25% to 58% in 2/8 rats) after 1-week oral administration of a *Fucus vesiculosus* powder (350 mg/kg/day). This powder (700 and 1400 mg/day) increased the menstrual cycle length and reduced the days of menstruation in a dose-dependent manner in three female human subjects with hypermenorrhea, dysmenorrhea, and other related ailments. In one subject, the plasma estradiol levels were decreased and the progesterone levels were increased in a dose-dependent manner.

In an *in vitro* study examining the photo-protection potential involving a *Sargassum muticum* extract, the effect of this extract against cell death induced by UVB radiation was studied. Cell viability was 61% in UVB (150 mJ/cm²) irradiated cells and 70% in UVB-irradiated cells treated with *Sargassum muticum* extract. Decreased numbers of apoptotic bodies as well as DNA fragmentation was apparent in cells exposed to *Sargassum muticum* extract and UVB versus UVB exposure alone.

In vitro dermal irritation assays were performed on a mixture containing 24% Undaria Pinnatifida Cell Culture Extract in water; a mixture containing Laminaria Japonica (7%), Nereocystis Leutkeana (7%), Macrocystis Pyrifera Extract (7%), and pentaerythrityl tetraethylhexanoate; and a mixture containing Sargassum Filipendula Extract (1.3%), water (81.78%), sorbitol (14%), hypnea musciformis extract (1.4%), gellidiela acerosa extract (1.3%), methylparaben (0.2%), and propylparaben (0.2%). These trade name mixtures were considered to be non-irritating.

Ascophyllum Nodosum Extract (4.7%), Laminaria Digitata Extract (0.5%) with dipropylene glycol and water or water and sea salt, and Laminaria Digitata Extract (0.5%) with artemisia vulgaris extract, phenoxyethanol, and water, were non-irritating in animal dermal irritation studies. Many human irritation studies were provided using test substances containing a brown algae ingredient, or combination of ingredients, along with other substances such as caprylic/capric triglycerides, butylene glycol, water, sea salt, propylene glycol, phenoxyethanol, panthenol, or dipropylene glycol. The majority of these studies resulted in negative results; however, irritation was seen in several studies after treatment with high concentrations or short periods of exposure. In a study using a trade name mixture consisting of Fucus Spiralis Extract (< 5%) in caprylic/capric triglycerides as the test substance, slight irritation was observed after 30 minutes, however, no irritation was reported after 24 hours. A trade name mixture containing 20% Himanthalia Elongata Extract, 37% Undaria Pinnatifida Extract, and 43% water, was considered to be very slightly irritating to human skin. When a test substance consisting of Laminaria Digitata Extract (1.5 - 2.5%) in water and propylene glycol was applied to the skin, moderate irritation was observed after 30 minutes, and slight irritation was observed after 24 hours. In a different study, Laminaria Saccharina Extract (1 - 3%) in water and propylene glycol was applied at concentrations of 8, 16, and 100% to 10 subjects. Slight irritation was observed at the 100% dose level, and no irritation was observed at the lower doses. When a trade name mixture containing Pelvetia Canaliculata Extract (1 - 3%) in propylene glycol and water was applied to the skin, moderate irritation was noted after 30 minutes, and slight irritation was noted after 24 hours. Similar results were observed when a trade name mixture consisting of Undaria Pinnatifida Extract (< 5%) in water and propylene glycol was applied to the skin of 12 subjects. In a different study, the test substance (trade name mixture containing Pelvetia Canaliculata Extract and Laminaria Digitata Extract extracted in propylene glycol with panthenol (the amount of dry extract of both extracts combined is estimated to be 5.5 - 9.0%)) was applied to the skin of 10 subjects at concentrations of 5, 10, and 100%. Mild irritation was observed at the 100% concentration, minimal concentration was observed at the 10% concentration, and no irritation was reported at the 5% concentration.

An ARE-Nfr2 Luciferase Test utilizing human keratinocyte cells at concentrations up to 2000 μ M was performed to study the sensitization potential of Undaria Pinnatifida Cell Culture Extract (24%). The test substance was considered to be non-sensitizing. A DPRA performed testing the sensitizing potential of the same ingredient yielded negative results. An ARE-Nfr2 Luciferase Test was also performed on a trade name mixture containing Sargassum Filipendula Extract (1.3%), water (81.78%), sorbitol (14%), Hypnea Musciformis Extract (1.4%), gellidiela acerosa extract (1.3%), methylparaben (0.2%), and propylparaben (0.025%). No sensitization potential was observed. Ascophyllum Nodosum Extract (25% - 75%) and Agarum Cribosum Extract (3%), was non-sensitizing when applied to the skin of 20 and 18 guinea pigs, respectively. No sensitization was noted when a cream containing 0.0023% Cystoseira Amentacea/Caespitosa/Brachycarpa Extract was applied to 25 animals in a maximization test. All *in vivo* sensitization studies performed on humans, regarding several brown algae ingredients (Alaria Esculenta Extract (0.5 - 2.5% and < 5%), Ascophyllum Nodosum Extract (0.5% - 75%), Cystoseira Baccata Extract (0.5 - 10%), Cystoseria Compressa Extract (1 - 3%), Cystoseira Tamariscifolia Extract (0.5 - 10%), Dictyopteris Polypodioides Extract (0.5 - 10%), Fucus Spiralis (1 - 3%), Fucus Vesiculosus Extract (5%), Halidrys Siliquosa Extract (48%), Halopteris Scoparia Extract (0.5 - 10%), Himanthalia Elongata Extract (0.2%), Macrocystis Pyrifera (Kelp) Extract (4%), Laminaria Digitata Extract (< 12%), Laminaria Ochrolueca Extract (< 5%), Laminaria Saccharina Extract (< 3%), Pelvetia Canaliculata Extract (< 44%), Phyllacantha Fibrosa Extract (< 10%), Sphacelaria Scoparia Extract, Sargassum Filipendula Extract (1.2%), Sargassum Muticum Extract (0.076%), and Undaria Pinnatifida Extract (< 5%)), were negative.

A phototoxicity study was performed according to OECD TG 432 using a trade name mixture containing 4.7% Ascophyllum Nodosum Extract in 94.5% water. No phototoxic activity was reported.

Many in vitro HET-CAM tests were performed. The majority of these tests resulted in no irritation or slight irritation; however, some studies resulted in moderate irritation. Moderate irritation was also noted when a cosmetic product consisting of Laminaria Ochroleuca Extract (5%), caprylic/capric triglycerides (94.75%), and tocopherols (0.25%), was used in a HET-CAM assay. Three ocular irritation assays performed using reconstructed cornea epithelium yielded negative results.

An *Ascophyllum nodosum* extract (100 mg) administered to the eyes of rabbits had a maximum irritation score of 6.7 out of 8 at 1 h post-instillation. The score decreased to 0 by day 7 and was rated as a mild ocular irritant. *Ascophyllum Nodosum* Extract was slightly irritating in an ocular irritation study performed according to OECD TG 405. No other details were provided for this study. The ophthalmic irritation potential of an eye cream containing 0.076% Sargassum Muticum Extract was tested in 31 subjects. The test material did not indicate a potential for ophthalmologic irritation and was considered safe for use by both contact and non-contact lens wearers. A test substance diluted to 20% containing Laminaria Digitata Extract ($\leq 10\%$), artemisia vulgaris extract ($\leq 10\%$), phenoxyethanol (0.8%), and water was considered non-irritating when placed in the eyes of New Zealand White rabbits.

No signs of edema or erythema were noted when a gel formulation containing 1% of an aqueous extract of *Fucus vesiculosus* (0.2 mL) was applied to the cheeks of 10 female subjects. In oral human clinical trials, adverse effects of an *Ascophyllum nodosum* powder (0.5 g/d), an *Ecklonia cava* extract (up to 400 mg/day), and an *Undaria pinnatifida* powder (average intake 3.3 g/d) were mild and transient. The adverse effects included nausea, indigestion, dyspepsia, and diarrhea.

DISCUSSION

The Panel reviewed the ingredients in this report, and concluded that 68 of the 82 brown algae-derived ingredients are safe as used in cosmetics in the present practices of use. The remaining 14 ingredients were determined to have insufficient data to support a conclusion of safety. Ingredient data profiles were considered sufficient when either composition data, systemic toxicity data (via use in food, GRAS status, or oral toxicity), or sensitization data were available. Ingredients lacking these data were considered to have insufficient safety data. Additionally, if the necessary data points were available for an ingredient of a given genus and species, then all other ingredient forms with the same genus and species were also found to be safe because of similarity in composition (e.g., Laminaria Digitata Extract and Laminaria Digitata Powder). Table 36 presents each ingredient, as well as a notation of the presence or absence of systemic toxicity data and sensitization data.

The Panel determined that concern for dermal sensitization or irritation is mitigated for those ingredients reported to be used in foods. The Panel supported this claim by clarifying that there are no case reports of adverse effects following ingestion or handling of these ingredients. In addition, the Panel explained that the compositions of these brown algae are consistent across the different genera, and no allergenic constituents were reported in the compositions of those ingredients.

The Panel noted that elevated levels of heavy metals, arsenic, and pesticide residues may be present in these brown algae-derived ingredients. The cosmetics industry should continue to use cGMPs to limit these impurities. In addition, possible estrogenic effects were noted; however, concern regarding these effects was mitigated as they were only seen at concentrations much higher than what would be used in cosmetics. Clinical studies suggesting the potential of toxic effects from exposure to iodine via consumption of brown algae as a dietary supplement were noted. However, the systemic exposure to iodine via the use of brown algae ingredients in cosmetics would be far less than that resulting from ingestion. The Panel also noted the presence of arachidonic acid (which was previously found by the Panel to have insufficient data to determine safety) in several of these brown algae ingredients, and determined that the concern can be mitigated as the final concentration of this material would be minimal in cosmetic formulations.

The Panel discussed the issue of incidental inhalation exposure from formulations that may be aerosolized (e.g., face/neck products at up to 0.79% (*Macrocystis Pyrifera* (Kelp) Extract). The Panel noted that in aerosol products, 95% – 99% of droplets/particles would not be respirable to any appreciable amount. Furthermore, droplets/particles deposited in the nasopharyngeal or bronchial regions of the respiratory tract present no toxicological concerns based on the chemical and biological properties of these ingredients. Coupled with the small actual exposure in the breathing zone and the concentrations at which the ingredients are used, the available information indicates that incidental inhalation would not be a significant route of exposure that might lead to local respiratory or systemic effects. A detailed discussion and summary of the Panel's approach to evaluating incidental inhalation exposures to ingredients in cosmetic products is available at <https://www.cir-safety.org/cir-findings>.

CONCLUSION

The CIR Expert Panel concluded that the following 68 of the 82 brown algae-derived ingredients are safe in cosmetics in the present practices of use and concentration described in this safety assessment.

Agarum Cribrosum Extract	Laminaria Japonica Extract
Alaria Esculenta Extract	Laminaria Hyperborea Extract
Ascophyllum Nodosum Extract	Laminaria Japonica Powder*
Ascophyllum Nodosum Powder	Laminaria Longissima Extract*
Ascophyllum Nodosum*	Laminaria Ochroleuca Extract
Cladosiphon Okamuranus Extract	Laminaria Saccharina Extract
Cystoseira Amentacea/Caespitosa/Branchycarpa Extract*	Macrocystis Pyrifera (Kelp)
Cystoseira Baccata Extract*	Macrocystis Pyrifera (Kelp) Blade/Pneumatocyst/Stipe Juice
Cystoseira Compressa Extract*	Extract*
Cystoseira Compressa Powder*	Macrocystis Pyrifera (Kelp) Extract
Cystoseira Tamariscifolia Extract*	Macrocystis Pyrifera (Kelp) Juice*
Dictyopteris Polypodioides Extract	Macrocystis Pyrifera (Kelp) Protein
Ecklonia Cava Extract*	Nereocystis Luetkeana Extract
Ecklonia Cava Water*	Pelvetia Canaliculata Extract
Eisenia Arborea Extract*	Phyllacantha Fibrosa Extract*
Fucus Serratus Extract	Saccharina Angustata Extract*
Fucus Spiralis Extract*	Saccharina Japonica Extract*
Fucus Vesiculosus	Saccharina Longicurris Extract
Fucus Vesiculosus Extract	Sargassum Filipendula Extract
Fucus Vesiculosus Powder	Sargassum Muticum Extract
Halidrys Siliquosa Extract	Sargassum Fulvellum Extract
Halopteris Scoparia Extract*	Sargassum Fusiforme Extract
Himanthalia Elongata Extract	Sargassum Glaucescens Extract*
Himanthalia Elongata Powder*	Sargassum Horneri Extract*
Hizikia Fusiforme Extract*	Sargassum Pallidum Extract*
Hizikia Fusiformis Callus Culture Extract*	Sargassum Siliquastrum Extract*
Hizikia Fusiformis Water*	Sargassum Thunbergii Extract*
Hydrolyzed Ecklonia Cava Extract*	Sargassum Vulgare Extract
Hydrolyzed Fucus Vesiculosus Extract*	Sphacelaria Scoparia Extract
Hydrolyzed Fucus Vesiculosus Protein*	Undaria Peterseniana Extract
Laminaria Cloustoni Extract	Undaria Pinnatifida Extract
Laminaria Diabolica Extract*	Undaria Pinnatifida Leaf/Stem Extract
Laminaria Digitata Extract	Undaria Pinnatifida Powder
Laminaria Digitata Powder	Undaria Pinnatifida Root Powder*
Undaria Pinnatifida Cell Culture Extract*	

**Not reported to be in current use. Were ingredients in this group not in current use to be used in the future, the expectation is that they would be used in product categories and at concentrations comparable to others in this group.*

The Panel also concluded that the available data are insufficient to support a conclusion of safety for the remaining 14 ingredients are under intended conditions of use in cosmetic formulations.

Cladosiphon Novae-Caledoniae Extract**	Ecklonia Maxima Extract**
Cystoseira Balearica Extract**	Ecklonia Maxima Powder**
Cystoseira Caespitosa Extract**	Ecklonia Radiata Extract
Dictyota Coriacea Extract**	Ecklonia/Laminaria Extract**
Durvillaea Antartica Extract	Lessonia Nigrescens Extract
Ecklonia Kurome Extract**	Lessonia Nigrescens Powder**
Ecklonia Kurome Powder**	Pelvetia Siliquosa Extract**

***Uses not reported.*

TABLES**Table 1. Brown algae INCI names**

Agarum Cribrosum Extract	Halopteris Scoparia Extract (equivalent to Sphacelaria Scoparia Extract)	Macrocystis Pyrifera (Kelp) Blade/Pneumatocyst/Stipe Juice Extract
Alaria Esculenta Extract	Himanthalia Elongata Extract	Macrocystis Pyrifera (Kelp) Extract
Ascophyllum Nodosum	Himanthalia Elongata Powder	Macrocystis Pyrifera (Kelp) Juice
Ascophyllum Nodosum Extract	Hizikia Fusiforme Extract (equivalent to Sargassum Fusiforme Extract)	Macrocystis Pyrifera (Kelp) Protein
Ascophyllum Nodosum Powder	Hizikia Fusiformis Water	Nereocystis Luetkeana Extract
Cladosiphon Novae-Caledoniae Extract	Hizikia Fusiformis Callus Culture Extract	Pelvetia Canaliculata Extract
Cladosiphon Okamuranus Extract	Hydrolyzed Ecklonia Cava Extract	Pelvetia Siliquosa Extract
Cystoseira Amentacea/Caespitosa/ Branchycarpa Extract	Hydrolyzed Fucus Vesiculosus Extract	Phyllacantha Fibrosa Extract (equivalent to Cystoseira Baccata Extract)
Cystoseira Baccata Extract (equivalent to Phyllacantha Fibrosa Extract)	Hydrolyzed Fucus Vesiculosus Protein	Saccharina Angustata Extract
Cystoseira Balearica Extract (equivalent to Cystoseira Caespitosa Extract)	Laminaria Cloustoni Extract (equivalent to Laminaria Hyperborea Extract)	Saccharina Japonica Extract (equivalent to Laminaria Diabolica Extract; Laminaria Japonica Extract; and Laminaria Ochroleuca Extract)
Cystoseira Caespitosa Extract (equivalent to Cystoseira Balearica Extract)	Laminaria Diabolica Extract (equivalent to Laminaria Japonica Extract; Laminaria Ochroleuca Extract; and Saccharina Japonica Extract)	Saccharina Longicuris Extract
Cystoseira Compressa Extract	Laminaria Digitata Extract	Sargassum Filipendula Extract
Cystoseira Compressa Powder	Laminaria Digitata Powder	Sargassum Fulvellum Extract
Cystoseira Tamariscifolia Extract	Laminaria Hyperborea Extract (equivalent to Laminaria Cloustoni Extract)	Sargassum Fusiforme Extract (equivalent to Hizikia Fusiforme Extract)
Dictyopteris Polypodioides Extract	Laminaria Japonica Extract (equivalent to Laminaria Diabolica Extract; Laminaria Ochroleuca Extract; and Saccharina Japonica Extract)	Sargassum Glaucescens Extract
Dictyota Coriacea Extract	Laminaria Japonica Powder	Sargassum Horneri Extract
Durvillaea Antarctica Extract	Laminaria Longissima Extract	Sargassum Muticum Extract
Ecklonia Cava Extract	Laminaria Ochroleuca Extract	Sargassum Pallidum Extract
Ecklonia Cava Water	(equivalent to Laminaria Diabolica Extract; Laminaria Japonica Extract; and Saccharina Japonica Extract)	Sargassum Siliquastrum Extract
Ecklonia Kurome Extract	Laminaria Japonica Extract	Sargassum Thunbergii Extract
Ecklonia Kurome Powder	Laminaria Japonica Extract	Sargassum Vulgare Extract
Ecklonia/Laminaria Extract	Laminaria Japonica Powder	Sphacelaria Scoparia Extract (equivalent to Halopteris Scoparia Extract)
Ecklonia Maxima Extract	Laminaria Longissima Extract	Undaria Peterseniana Extract
Ecklonia Maxima Powder	Laminaria Ochroleuca Extract (equivalent to Laminaria Diabolica Extract; Laminaria Japonica Extract; and Saccharina Japonica Extract)	Undaria Pinnatifida Extract
Ecklonia Radiata Extract	Laminaria Japonica Extract	Undaria Pinnatifida Cell Culture Extract
Eisenia Arborea Extract	Laminaria Japonica Extract	Undaria Pinnatifida Leaf/Stem Extract
Fucus Serratus Extract	Laminaria Japonica Extract	Undaria Pinnatifida Powder
Fucus Spiralis Extract	Laminaria Saccharina Extract	Undaria Pinnatifida Root Powder
Fucus Vesiculosus	Lessonia Nigrescens Extract	
Fucus Vesiculosus Extract	Lessonia Nigrescens Powder	
Fucus Vesiculosus Powder	Macrocystis Pyrifera (Kelp)	
Halidrys Siliquosa Extract		

Table 2. Current and retired INCI names, definitions, and functions of the brown algae-derived ingredients in this safety assessment¹

Ingredient	Definition	Function
Agarum Cribrosum Extract	Agarum Cribrosum Extract is the extract of the alga, <i>Agarum cribrosum</i> .	Skin-conditioning agent - miscellaneous
Alaria Esculenta Extract	Alaria Esculenta Extract is the extract of the alga, <i>Alaria esculenta</i> .	Hair conditioning agent; skin protectant
Ascophyllum Nodosum	Ascophyllum Nodosum is the alga, <i>Ascophyllum nodosum</i> .	Skin-conditioning agent - miscellaneous
Ascophyllum Nodosum Extract	Ascophyllum Nodosum Extract is the extract of the alga, <i>Ascophyllum nodosum</i> .	Skin-conditioning agent - miscellaneous
Ascophyllum Nodosum Powder	Ascophyllum Nodosum Powder is the powder obtained from the dried, ground alga, <i>Ascophyllum nodosum</i> .	Skin-conditioning agent - miscellaneous
Cladosiphon Novae-Caledoniae Extract	Cladosiphon Novae-Caledoniae Extract is the extract of the alga, <i>Cladosiphon novae-caledoniae</i> .	Humectant; skin protectant
Cladosiphon Okamuranus Extract	Cladosiphon Okamuranus Extract is the extract of the alga, <i>Cladosiphon okamuranus</i> .	Skin-conditioning agent - miscellaneous
Cystoseira Amentacea/Caespitosa/ Branchycarpa Extract	Cystoseira Amentacea/Caespitosa/Branchycarpa Extract is the extract of the algae, <i>Cystoseira amentacea</i> , <i>Cystoseira caespitosa</i> , and <i>Cystoseira branchycarpa</i> .	Skin-conditioning agent - miscellaneous
Cystoseira Baccata Extract	Cystoseira Baccata Extract is the extract of the alga, <i>Cystoseira baccata</i> .	Skin-conditioning agent - miscellaneous
<i>Phyllacantha Fibrosa Extract</i>	<i>Phyllacantha Fibrosa Extract</i> is the extract of the alga, <i>Phyllacantha fibrosa</i> . The accepted scientific name for <i>Phyllacantha fibrosa</i> is <i>Cystoseira baccata</i> .	Skin-conditioning agent - miscellaneous

Table 2. Current and retired INCI names, definitions, and functions of the brown algae-derived ingredients in this safety assessment¹

Ingredient	Definition	Function
Cystoseira Balearica Extract	Cystoseira Balearica Extract is the extract of the alga, <i>Cystoseira balearica</i> . The accepted scientific name for <i>Cystoseira balearica</i> is <i>Cystoseira brachycarpa</i> .	Skin-conditioning agent - miscellaneous
<i>Cystoseira Caespitosa Extract</i>	<i>Cystoseira Caespitosa Extract</i> is the extract of the alga, <i>Cystoseira caespitosa</i> . The accepted scientific name for <i>Cystoseira caespitosa</i> is <i>Cystoseira brachycarpa</i> .	<i>Skin protectant</i>
<i>Cystoseira Caespitosa Extract</i>	See <i>Cystoseira Balearica Extract</i> .	
Cystoseira Compressa Extract	Cystoseira Compressa Extract is the extract of the alga, <i>Cystoseira compressa</i> .	Skin-conditioning agent - miscellaneous
Cystoseira Compressa Powder	Cystoseira Compressa Powder is the dried, ground powder obtained from the alga, <i>Cystoseira compressa</i> .	Skin-conditioning agent - miscellaneous
Cystoseira Tamariscifolia Extract	Cystoseira Tamariscifolia Extract is the extract of the alga, <i>Cystoseira tamariscifolia</i> .	Skin-conditioning agent - miscellaneous
Dictyopteris Polypodioides Extract	Dictyopteris Polypodioides Extract is the extract of the alga, <i>Dictyopteris polypodioides</i> .	Skin-conditioning agent – emollient; skin-conditioning agent - miscellaneous
Dictyopteris Membranacea Extract (Retired)	Dictyopteris Membranacea Extract (Retired) is the extract of the alga, <i>Dictyopteris membranacea</i> . The INCI Name, Dictyopteris Membranacea Extract, originally published in 2007, was designated with a retired status in 2015. For an interim period of time, trade name assignments formerly published with the INCI Name Dictyopteris Membranacea Extract will be retained in the retired monograph, and also published with the new name assignment based on the current genus and species name, Dictyopteris Polypodioides Extract.	Antioxidant
Dictyota Coriacea Extract	Dictyota Coriacea Extract is the extract of the alga, <i>Dictyota coriacea</i> .	Oxidizing agent
Durvillaea Antarctica Extract	Durvillaea Antarctica Extract is the extract of the alga, <i>Durvillaea antarctica</i> .	Skin-conditioning agent - miscellaneous
Ecklonia Cava Extract	Ecklonia Cava Extract is the extract of the alga, <i>Ecklonia cava</i> .	Humectant; skin-conditioning agent - humectant
Ecklonia Cava Water	Ecklonia Cava Water is the aqueous solution of the steam distillates obtained from the alga, <i>Ecklonia cava</i> .	Skin protectant
Ecklonia Kurome Extract	Ecklonia Kurome Extract is the extract of the alga, <i>Ecklonia kurome</i> .	Skin-conditioning agent – humectant; skin-conditioning agent - miscellaneous
Ecklonia Kurome Powder	Ecklonia Kurome Powder is the powder obtained from the dried, ground alga, <i>Ecklonia kurome</i> .	Skin-conditioning agent - humectant
Ecklonia/Laminaria Extract	Ecklonia/Laminaria Extract is the extract of a mixture of the algae, <i>Ecklonia</i> and <i>Laminaria</i> .	Skin-conditioning agent - miscellaneous
Ecklonia Maxima Extract	Ecklonia Maxima Extract is the extract of the alga, <i>Ecklonia maxima</i> .	Skin-conditioning agent - miscellaneous
Ecklonia Maxima Powder	Ecklonia Maxima Powder is the powder obtained from the dried, ground alga, <i>Ecklonia maxima</i> .	Skin-conditioning agent - miscellaneous
Ecklonia Radiata Extract	Ecklonia Radiata Extract is the extract of the alga, <i>Ecklonia radiata</i> .	Hair conditioning agent; skin-conditioning agent - miscellaneous
Eisenia Arborea Extract	Eisenia Arborea Extract is the extract of the alga, <i>Eisenia arborea</i> .	Skin-conditioning agent - miscellaneous
Fucus Serratus Extract 94167-02-9	Fucus Serratus Extract is the extract of the alga, <i>Fucus serratus</i> .	Skin-conditioning agent - miscellaneous
Fucus Spiralis Extract	Fucus Spiralis Extract is the extract of the alga, <i>Fucus spiralis</i> .	Skin-conditioning agent – emollient; skin-conditioning agent - miscellaneous
Fucus Vesiculosus	Fucus Vesiculosus is the alga, <i>Fucus vesiculosus</i> .	Skin-conditioning agent - miscellaneous
Fucus Vesiculosus Extract 283-633-7	Fucus Vesiculosus Extract is the extract of the alga, <i>Fucus vesiculosus</i> .	Fragrance ingredient; skin-conditioning agent - miscellaneous
Fucus Vesiculosus Powder	Fucus Vesiculosus Powder is the powder obtained from dried, ground <i>Fucus vesiculosus</i> .	Skin-conditioning agent - miscellaneous
Halidrys Siliquosa Extract	Halidrys Siliquosa Extract is the extract of the alga, <i>Halidrys siliquosa</i> .	Skin-conditioning agent - miscellaneous
Halopteris Scoparia Extract	Halopteris Scoparia Extract is the extract of the alga, <i>Halopteris scoparia</i> .	Skin-conditioning agent - miscellaneous
<i>Sphacelaria Scoparia Extract</i>	<i>Sphacelaria Scoparia Extract</i> is the extract of the alga, <i>Sphacelaria scoparia</i> . The accepted scientific name for <i>Sphacelaria scoparia</i> is <i>Halopteris scoparia</i> .	<i>Corn/callus/wart remover</i>
Himanthalia Elongata Extract	Himanthalia Elongata Extract is the extract of the thallus of the alga, <i>Himanthalia elongata</i> .	Skin-conditioning agent - miscellaneous

Table 2. Current and retired INCI names, definitions, and functions of the brown algae-derived ingredients in this safety assessment¹

Ingredient	Definition	Function
Himanthalia Elongata Powder	Himanthalia Elongata Powder is the powder obtained from the dried, ground alga, <i>Himanthalia elongata</i> .	Absorbent; binder; viscosity increasing agent -aqueous
<i>Hizikia Fusiforme Extract</i>	<i>See Sargassum Fusiforme Extract</i>	
Hizikia Fusiformis Water	Hizikia Fusiformis Water is the aqueous solution of the steam distillates obtained from the alga, <i>Hizikia fusiformis</i> . The accepted scientific name for <i>Hizikia fusiformis</i> is <i>Sargassum fusiforme</i> .	Skin protectant
Hizikia Fusiformis Callus Culture Extract	Hizikia Fusiformis Callus Culture Extract is the extract of a culture of the callus of <i>Hizikia fusiformis</i> . The accepted scientific name for <i>Hizikia fusiformis</i> is <i>Sargassum fusiforme</i> .	Antifungal agent; antioxidant; hair conditioning agent; skin-conditioning agent - miscellaneous
Hydrolyzed Ecklonia Cava Extract	Hydrolyzed Ecklonia Cava Extract is the hydrolysate of an extract of the alga, <i>Ecklonia cava</i> derived by acid, enzyme or other method of hydrolysis.	Skin-conditioning agent - miscellaneous
Hydrolyzed Fucus Vesiculosus Extract 84696-13-9	Fucus Vesiculosus Extract is the extract of the alga, <i>Fucus vesiculosus</i> .	Fragrance ingredient; skin-conditioning agent – miscellaneous
Hydrolyzed Fucus Vesiculosus Protein	Hydrolyzed Fucus Vesiculosus Extract is the extract of the hydrolysate of <i>Fucus vesiculosus</i> derived by acid, enzyme or other method of hydrolysis.	None reported
<i>Laminaria Cloustoni Extract</i>	<i>See Laminaria Hyperborea Extract.</i>	
<i>Laminaria Diabolica Extract</i>	<i>See Saccharina Japonica Extract.</i>	
Laminaria Digitata Extract 90046-12-1 92128-82-0	Laminaria Digitata Extract is the extract of the alga, <i>Laminaria digitata</i> .	Fragrance ingredient; skin protectant; skin-conditioning agent - miscellaneous
Laminaria Digitata Powder	Laminaria Digitata Powder is the powder obtained from the dried, ground thallus of the alga, <i>Laminaria digitata</i> .	Skin-conditioning agent - miscellaneous
Laminaria Hyperborea Extract 90046-13-2 92128-82-0	Laminaria Hyperborea Extract is the extract of the alga, <i>Laminaria hyperborea</i> .	Fragrance ingredient; skin protectant
<i>Laminaria Cloustoni Extract</i> 90046-11-0 92128-82-0	Laminaria Cloustoni Extract is the extract of the alga, <i>Laminaria cloustoni</i> . The accepted scientific name for <i>Laminaria cloustoni</i> is <i>Laminaria hyperborea</i> .	Fragrance ingredient
<i>Laminaria Japonica Extract</i>	<i>See Saccharina Japonica Extract.</i>	
Laminaria Japonica Powder	Laminaria Japonica Powder is the powder obtained from the dried, ground alga, <i>Laminaria japonica</i> . The accepted scientific name for <i>Laminaria japonica</i> is <i>Saccharina japonica</i> .	Skin-conditioning agent - miscellaneous
Laminaria Longissima Extract	Laminaria Longissima Extract is the extract of the alga, <i>Laminaria longissima</i> . The accepted scientific name for <i>Laminaria longissima</i> is <i>Saccharina longissima</i>	Skin-conditioning agent - humectant
<i>Laminaria Ochroleuca Extract</i>	<i>See Saccharina Japonica Extract.</i>	
Laminaria Saccharina Extract 90046-14-3 92128-82-0	Laminaria Saccharina Extract is the extract of the thallus of the alga, <i>Laminaria saccharina</i> . The accepted scientific name for <i>Laminaria saccharina</i> is <i>Saccharina latissima</i> .	Fragrance ingredient; skin-conditioning agent - miscellaneous
Lessonia Nigrescens Extract	Lessonia Nigrescens Extract is the extract of the alga, <i>Lessonia nigrescens</i> .	Skin protectant
Lessonia Nigrescens Powder	Lessonia Nigrescens Powder is the powder obtained from the dried, ground alga, <i>Lessonia nigrescens</i> .	Binder
Macrocystis Pyrifera (Kelp)	Macrocystis Pyrifera (Kelp) is the alga, <i>Macrocystis pyriferae</i> .	Viscosity increasing agent - aqueous
Macrocystis Pyrifera (Kelp) Blade/Pneumatocyst/Stipe Juice Extract	Macrocystis Pyrifera (Kelp) Blade/Pneumatocyst/Stipe Juice Extract is the extract of the juice derived from the blade, pneumatocyst and stipe of the alga, <i>Macrocystis pyrifera</i> .	Skin-conditioning agent - miscellaneous
Macrocystis Pyrifera (Kelp) Extract 347174-92-9	Macrocystis Pyrifera (Kelp) Extract is the extract of the alga, <i>Macrocystis pyrifera</i> .	Skin-conditioning agent - miscellaneous
Macrocystis Pyrifera (Kelp) Juice	Macrocystis Pyrifera (Kelp) Juice is the juice expressed from the alga, <i>Macrocystis pyrifera</i> .	Skin-conditioning agent - miscellaneous
Macrocystis Pyrifera (Kelp) Protein	Macrocystis Pyrifera (Kelp) Protein is the protein derived from the alga, <i>Macrocystis pyrifera</i> .	Skin-conditioning agent - miscellaneous
Nereocystis Luetkeana Extract	Nereocystis Luetkeana Extract is the extract of the alga, <i>Nereocystis luetkeana</i> .	Hair conditioning agent; skin-conditioning agent - miscellaneous
Pelvetia Canaliculata Extract 223751-75-5	Pelvetia Canaliculata Extract is the extract of the alga, <i>Pelvetia canaliculata</i> .	Skin protectant; skin-conditioning agent - miscellaneous
Pelvetia Siliquosa Extract	Pelvetia Siliquosa Extract is the extract of the alga, <i>Pelvetia siliquosa</i> .	Antioxidant; skin protectant; skin-conditioning agent - humectant
<i>Phyllacantha Fibrosa Extract</i>	<i>See Cystoseira Baccata Extract.</i>	

Table 2. Current and retired INCI names, definitions, and functions of the brown algae-derived ingredients in this safety assessment¹

Ingredient	Definition	Function
Saccharina Angustata Extract	Saccharina Angustata Extract is the extract of the alga, <i>Saccharina angustata</i> .	Skin-conditioning agent - emollient; skin-conditioning agent - miscellaneous
Laminaria Angustata Extract (Retired)	Laminaria Angustata Extract (Retired) is the extract of the alga, <i>Laminaria angustata</i> . The INCI Name, Laminaria Angustata Extract, originally published in 2003, was designated with a retired status in 2015. For an interim period of time, trade name assignments formerly published with the INCI Name Laminaria Angustata Extract will be retained in the retired monograph, and also published with the new name assignment based on the current genus and species name, Saccharina Angustata Extract.	Skin-conditioning agent - miscellaneous
Saccharina Japonica Extract	Saccharina Japonica Extract is the extract of the alga, <i>Saccharina japonica</i> .	Skin-conditioning agent - miscellaneous
Laminaria Ochotensis Extract (Retired)	Laminaria Ochotensis Extract (Retired) is the extract of the alga, <i>Laminaria ochotensis</i> . The INCI Name, Laminaria Ochotensis Extract, originally published in 2008, was designated with a retired status in 2015. For an interim period of time, trade name assignments formerly published with the INCI Name Laminaria Ochotensis Extract will be retained in the retired monograph, and also published with the new name assignment based on the current genus and species name, Saccharina Japonica Extract.	Skin-conditioning agent - emollient
<i>Laminaria Diabolica Extract</i>	<i>Laminaria Diabolica Extract is the extract of the alga, Laminaria diabolica. The accepted scientific name for Laminaria diabolica is Saccharina japonica.</i>	<i>Skin-conditioning agent - humectant</i>
<i>Laminaria Japonica Extract 92128-82-0</i>	<i>Laminaria Japonica Extract is the extract of the alga, Laminaria japonica. The accepted scientific name for Laminaria japonica is Saccharina japonica.</i>	<i>Fragrance ingredient</i>
<i>Laminaria Ochroleuca Extract 92128-82-0</i>	<i>Laminaria Ochroleuca Extract is the extract of the alga, Laminaria ochroleuca. The accepted scientific name for Laminaria ochroleuca is Saccharina japonica.</i>	<i>Fragrance ingredient; skin-conditioning agent - miscellaneous</i>
Saccharina Longicuris Extract	Saccharina Longicuris Extract is the extract of the alga, <i>Saccharina longicuris</i> .	Skin-conditioning agent - humectant
Sargassum Filipendula Extract	Sargassum Filipendula Extract is the extract of the brown alga, <i>Sargassum filipendula</i> .	Skin-conditioning agent - miscellaneous
Sargassum Fulvellum Extract	Sargassum Fulvellum Extract is the extract of the alga, <i>Sargassum fulvellum</i> .	Skin-conditioning agent - miscellaneous
Sargassum Fusiforme Extract	Sargassum Fusiforme Extract is the extract of the brown alga, <i>Sargassum fusiforme</i> .	Skin-conditioning agent - miscellaneous
<i>Hizikia Fusiforme Extract</i>	<i>Hizikia Fusiforme Extract is the extract of the alga, Hizikia fusiforme. The accepted scientific name for Hizikia fusiforme is Sargassum fusiforme.</i>	<i>Skin protectant; skin-conditioning agent - miscellaneous</i>
Sargassum Glaucescens Extract	Sargassum Glaucescens Extract is the extract of the alga, <i>Sargassum glaucescens</i> .	Antioxidant
Sargassum Horneri Extract	Sargassum Horneri Extract is the extract of the alga, <i>Sargassum horneri</i> .	Skin-conditioning agent - miscellaneous
Sargassum Muticum Extract	Sargassum Muticum Extract is the extract of the alga <i>Sargassum muticum</i> .	Skin-conditioning agent - miscellaneous
Sargassum Pallidum Extract	Sargassum Pallidum Extract is the extract of the alga, <i>Sargassum pallidum</i> .	Antifungal agent; antioxidant
Sargassum Siliquastrum Extract	Sargassum Siliquastrum Extract is the extract of the alga, <i>Sargassum siliquastrum</i> .	Skin-conditioning agent - miscellaneous
Sargassum Thunbergii Extract	Sargassum Thunbergii Extract is the extract of the alga, <i>Sargassum thunbergii</i> .	Antimicrobial agent
Sargassum Vulgare Extract	Sargassum Vulgare Extract is the extract of the alga, <i>Sargassum vulgare</i> .	Skin-conditioning agent - miscellaneous
<i>Sphacelaria Scoparia Extract</i>	<i>See Halopteris Scoparia Extract.</i>	
Undaria Peterseniana Extract	Undaria Peterseniana Extract is the extract of the alga <i>Undaria peterseniana</i> .	Skin-conditioning agent - miscellaneous
Undaria Pinnatifida Extract	Undaria Pinnatifida Extract is the extract of the alga, <i>Undaria pinnatifida</i> .	Skin protectant; skin-conditioning agent - miscellaneous
Undaria Pinnatifida Cell Culture Extract	Undaria Pinnatifida Cell Culture Extract is the extract of a cell culture suspension of <i>Undaria pinnatifida</i> .	Hair conditioning agent; skin-conditioning agent - miscellaneous
Undaria Pinnatifida Leaf/Stem Extract	Undaria Pinnatifida Leaf/Stem Extract is the extract of the leaves and stems of <i>Undaria pinnatifida</i> .	Skin-conditioning agent – emollient
Undaria Pinnatifida Powder	Undaria Pinnatifida Powder is the powder obtained from the dried, ground alga, <i>Undaria pinnatifida</i> .	Absorbent; binder; viscosity increasing agent - nonaqueous
Undaria Pinnatifida Root Powder	Undaria Pinnatifida Root Powder is the powder obtained from the dried, ground root-like structures of the alga, <i>Undaria pinnatifida</i> .	Humectant; skin-conditioning agent - humectant

Table 3. Descriptions of major algae groups

Common Name	Kingdom	Class	Description	Reference
Brown Algae	Chromista	Phaeophyceae	-mostly large, leathery seaweeds -cellulose wall with alginic acid and fucoidan -derived alginic acid is used as a suspending, emulsifying, gel-forming and film-forming agent	12
Green Algae	Plantae	Chlorophyta	-usually green in color -cellulose cell walls -store starch -beta carotene -chlorophyll a & b	12
Diatoms	Stramenopila	Bacillariophyceae	-golden brown in color -silica cell walls -store oil as food reserve -carotenoids -chlorophyll a & c	12
Chrysophytes	Stramenopila	Chrysophyta	-consists of diatoms, golden-brown algae and yellow-green algae -cellulose cell walls with large amounts of silica -chlorophyll a & c	12,155
Blue Green Algae	Monera	Cyanophyta	-phycobilins present -store glycogen -prokaryotic -chlorophyll a -some are toxic	12
Red Algae	Plantae	Rhodophyta	-phycobilins present -store floridean starch -cellulose cell wall -chlorophyll a & d -source of agar -used as a stabilizer and thickener in many products	12
Dinoflagellates	Alveolata	Pyrrhophyta	-some produce toxins -mostly marine	12,156
Euglenoids	Euglenozoa	Euglenophyta	-common in freshwater -can be parasitic	12,157

Table 4. Taxonomy of brown-algae derived ingredients based on currently accepted scientific name¹⁵⁸

Subclass	Order	Family	Genus	Ingredient
Dictyotophycidae	Dictyotales	Dictyotaceae	Dictyopteris	Dictyopteris Polypodioides Extract
Dictyotophycidae	Dictyotales	Dictyotaceae	Dictyota	Dictyota Coriacea Extract
Dictyotophycidae	Sphacelariales	Sphacelariaceae	Sphacelaria	Sphacelaria Scoparia Extract
Dictyotophycidae	Sphacelariales	Sphacelariaceae	Sphacelaria	Halopteris Scoparia Extract
Fucophycidae	Ectocarpales	Chordariaceae	Cladosiphon	Cladosiphon Novae-Caledoniae Extract
Fucophycidae	Ectocarpales	Chordariaceae	Cladosiphon	Cladosiphon Okamuranus Extract
Fucophycidae	Fucales	Durvillaeaceae	Durvillaea	Durvillaea Antarctica Extract
Fucophycidae	Fucales	Fucaceae	Ascophyllum	Ascophyllum Nodosum
Fucophycidae	Fucales	Fucaceae	Ascophyllum	Ascophyllum Nodosum Extract
Fucophycidae	Fucales	Fucaceae	Ascophyllum	Ascophyllum Nodosum Powder
Fucophycidae	Fucales	Fucaceae	Fucus	Fucus Serratus Extract
Fucophycidae	Fucales	Fucaceae	Fucus	Fucus Spiralis Extract
Fucophycidae	Fucales	Fucaceae	Fucus	Fucus Vesiculosus
Fucophycidae	Fucales	Fucaceae	Fucus	Fucus Vesiculosus Extract
Fucophycidae	Fucales	Fucaceae	Fucus	Fucus Vesiculosus Powder
Fucophycidae	Fucales	Fucaceae	Fucus	Hydrolyzed Fucus Vesiculosus Extract
Fucophycidae	Fucales	Fucaceae	Fucus	Hydrolyzed Fucus Vesiculosus Protein
Fucophycidae	Fucales	Fucaceae	Pelvetia	Pelvetia Canaliculata Extract
Fucophycidae	Fucales	Fucaceae	Pelvetia	Pelvetia Siliquosa Extract
Fucophycidae	Fucales	Himanthaliaceae	Himanthalia	Himanthalia Elongata Extract
Fucophycidae	Fucales	Himanthaliaceae	Himanthalia	Himanthalia Elongata Powder
Fucophycidae	Fucales	Sargassaceae	Cystoseira	Cystoseira Amentacea/Caespitosa/ Branchycarpa Extract
Fucophycidae	Fucales	Sargassaceae	Cystoseira	Cystoseira Baccata Extract
Fucophycidae	Fucales	Sargassaceae	Cystoseira	Cystoseira Balearica Extract
Fucophycidae	Fucales	Sargassaceae	Cystoseira	Cystoseira Caespitosa Extract
Fucophycidae	Fucales	Sargassaceae	Cystoseira	Cystoseira Compressa Extract
Fucophycidae	Fucales	Sargassaceae	Cystoseira	Cystoseira Compressa Powder
Fucophycidae	Fucales	Sargassaceae	Cystoseira	Cystoseira Tamariscifolia Extract
Fucophycidae	Fucales	Sargassaceae	Halidrys	Halidrys Siliquosa Extract
Fucophycidae	Fucales	Sargassaceae	Hizikia	Hizikia Fusiforme Extract
Fucophycidae	Fucales	Sargassaceae	Sargassum	Hizikia Fusiformis Water

Table 4. Taxonomy of brown-algae derived ingredients based on currently accepted scientific name¹⁵⁸

Subclass	Order	Family	Genus	Ingredient
Fucophycidae	Fucales	Sargassaceae	Hizikia	Hizikia Fusiformis Callus Culture Extract
Fucophycidae	Fucales	Sargassaceae	Cystoseira	Phyllacantha Fibrosa Extract
Fucophycidae	Fucales	Sargassaceae	Sargassum	Sargassum Filipendula Extract
Fucophycidae	Fucales	Sargassaceae	Sargassum	Sargassum Fulvellum Extract
Fucophycidae	Fucales	Sargassaceae	Sargassum	Sargassum Fusiforme Extract
Fucophycidae	Fucales	Sargassaceae	Sargassum	Sargassum Glaucescens Extract
Fucophycidae	Fucales	Sargassaceae	Sargassum	Sargassum Horneri Extract
Fucophycidae	Fucales	Sargassaceae	Sargassum	Sargassum Muticum Extract
Fucophycidae	Fucales	Sargassaceae	Sargassum	Sargassum Pallidum Extract
Fucophycidae	Fucales	Sargassaceae	Sargassum	Sargassum Siliquastrum Extract
Fucophycidae	Fucales	Sargassaceae	Sargassum	Sargassum Thunbergii Extract
Fucophycidae	Fucales	Sargassaceae	Sargassum	Sargassum Vulgare Extract
Fucophycidae	Laminariales	Agaraceae	Agarum	Agarum Cribrosum Extract
Fucophycidae	Laminariales	Agaraceae	Alaria	Alaria Esculenta Extract
Fucophycidae	Laminariales	Alariaceae	Undaria	Undaria Peterseniana Extract
Fucophycidae	Laminariales	Alariaceae	Undaria	Undaria Pinnatifida Extract
Fucophycidae	Laminariales	Alariaceae	Undaria	Undaria Pinnatifida Cell Culture Extract
Fucophycidae	Laminariales	Alariaceae	Undaria	Undaria Pinnatifida Leaf/Stem Extract
Fucophycidae	Laminariales	Alariaceae	Undaria	Undaria Pinnatifida Powder
Fucophycidae	Laminariales	Alariaceae	Undaria	Undaria Pinnatifida Root Powder
Fucophycidae	Laminariales	Laminariaceae	Laminaria	Laminaria Cloustoni Extract
Fucophycidae	Laminariales	Laminariaceae	Saccharina	Laminaria Diabolica Extract
Fucophycidae	Laminariales	Laminariaceae	Laminaria	Laminaria Digitata Extract
Fucophycidae	Laminariales	Laminariaceae	Laminaria	Laminaria Digitata Powder
Fucophycidae	Laminariales	Laminariaceae	Laminaria	Laminaria Hyperborea Extract
Fucophycidae	Laminariales	Laminariaceae	Saccharina	Laminaria Japonica Extract
Fucophycidae	Laminariales	Laminariaceae	Saccharina	Laminaria Japonica Powder
Fucophycidae	Laminariales	Laminariaceae	Laminaria	Laminaria Longissima Extract
Fucophycidae	Laminariales	Laminariaceae	Saccharina	Laminaria Ochroleuca Extract
Fucophycidae	Laminariales	Laminariaceae	Laminaria	Laminaria Saccharina Extract
Fucophycidae	Laminariales	Laminariaceae	Macrocystis	Macrocystis Pyrifera (Kelp)
Fucophycidae	Laminariales	Laminariaceae	Macrocystis	Macrocystis Pyrifera (Kelp) Blade/Pneumatocyst/Stipe Juice Extract
Fucophycidae	Laminariales	Laminariaceae	Macrocystis	Macrocystis Pyrifera (Kelp) Extract
Fucophycidae	Laminariales	Laminariaceae	Macrocystis	Macrocystis Pyrifera (Kelp) Juice
Fucophycidae	Laminariales	Laminariaceae	Macrocystis	Macrocystis Pyrifera (Kelp) Protein
Fucophycidae	Laminariales	Laminariaceae	Nereocystis	Nereocystis Luetkeana Extract
Fucophycidae	Laminariales	Laminariaceae	Saccharina	Saccharina Angustata Extract
Fucophycidae	Laminariales	Laminariaceae	Saccharina	Saccharina Japonica Extract
Fucophycidae	Laminariales	Laminariaceae	Saccharina	Saccharina Longicuris Extract
Fucophycidae	Laminariales	Lessoniaceae	Ecklonia	Ecklonia Cava Extract
Fucophycidae	Laminariales	Lessoniaceae	Ecklonia	Ecklonia Cava Water
Fucophycidae	Laminariales	Lessoniaceae	Ecklonia	Ecklonia Kurome Extract
Fucophycidae	Laminariales	Lessoniaceae	Ecklonia	Ecklonia Kurome Powder
Fucophycidae	Laminariales	Lessoniaceae	Ecklonia	Ecklonia/Laminaria Extract
Fucophycidae	Laminariales	Lessoniaceae	Ecklonia	Ecklonia Maxima Extract
Fucophycidae	Laminariales	Lessoniaceae	Ecklonia	Ecklonia Maxima Powder
Fucophycidae	Laminariales	Lessoniaceae	Ecklonia	Ecklonia Radiata Extract
Fucophycidae	Laminariales	Lessoniaceae	Ecklonia	Hydrolyzed Ecklonia Cava Extract
Fucophycidae	Laminariales	Lessoniaceae	Eisenia	Eisenia Arborea Extract
Fucophycidae	Laminariales	Lessoniaceae	Lessonia	Lessonia Nigrescens Extract
Fucophycidae	Laminariales	Lessoniaceae	Lessonia	Lessonia Nigrescens Powder

Table 5. General characteristics and geographic distribution of several brown algae species

Species (common name)	Description	Distribution/Habitat/Ecology	References
<i>Agarum cribrosum</i>	-	North Atlantic (Massachusetts to east Greenland) and North Pacific (Washington state to Japan and Russia) Forms thick beds at depths of 10-12 m	158
<i>Alaria esculenta</i> (dabberlocks, badderlocks, winged kelp)	Olive or yellow-brown fronds to 4 m long and 25 cm wide, more often about 1 m and 7.5 cm wide. Attached by a root-like holdfast at the base from which a narrow flexible stipe arises which continues into the leafy part of the algae as a distinct mid-rib, generally with a yellow-brown color. The reproductive structures, apparent as dark-brown areas, are confined to unbranched leafy appendages borne on the stipe, usually in two rows.	North Atlantic Ocean Generally growing on rock in wave-exposed places, often forming a band at low water and in the shallow subtidal, but also occurring in tidal pools in the lower shore.	158,159
<i>Ascophyllum nodosum</i> (asco, sea whistle, bladderwrack, rockweed)	Closely related to <i>Fucus</i> . Up to 3 m in height and is yellow in areas exposed to sunlight and dark green or brown in its shaded parts. Single bladders are central in long, strap-like fronds. Fronds hang downwards. Multiple fronds grow from each basal holdfast; generally regenerates new fronds from base when one of the larger fronds is damaged. Reproduction takes place in spring in yellow receptacles, which develop in response to short days in autumn, mature during winter, and are at their most prolific in spring. Eggs and sperm are released into water, and eggs release a low molecular weight pheromone, finnavarene.	North Atlantic basin (Virginia to Spain) Has been observed in San Francisco Bay, but does not persist there. Sheltered intertidal rocks in shallow (usually where it is exposed at low or extreme low tides)	158-161
<i>Cystoseira baccata</i> (bushy berry wrack) also known as <i>Phyllacantha fibrosa</i>	Thallus to 1 m long, usually solitary, attached by a thick, conical attachment disc. Axis simple or branched, and flattened; apex smooth and surrounded during periods of active growth by incurved young laterals. Lateral branch systems alternate, radially symmetrical, profusely branched in a repeatedly pinnate fashion and bearing sparse, filiform, occasionally bifurcated appendages on the branches; deciduous, leaving decurrent bases which give an irregular, zigzag outline to the axis. Air vesicles present in axes of branches of higher order, sometimes in chains; seasonal, particularly numerous in autumn. Receptacles 1-5 cm long, formed from axes of ultimate ramuli, irregularly nodose and bearing simple, filiform appendages.	S England, W Ireland north to W Scotland. Has been noted down to Morocco and in Mediterranean Sea. Lower intertidal in large sandy pools or lagoons, mostly in persistent stands.	158,159
<i>Cystoseira tamariscifolia</i> (bushy rainbow wrack)	Solitary thalli, up to 1 m long, bushy, with a pronounced greenish or bluish iridescence when submerged or wet; attached by a conical disc. Axis is cylindrical, up to 60 cm long, usually branched and with an inconspicuous apex. Lateral branch systems arising in spiral sequence, up to 60 cm long, profusely branched in a repeatedly pinnate fashion, showing radial symmetry with simple or bifid spine-like appendages: deciduous, leaving prominent scars or stumps. Cryptostomata present on branches and appendages. Ovoid air vesicles often present in axes of ultimate ramuli. Receptacles 1-2 cm long, formed from terminal regions of ultimate ramuli.	Western Mediterranean Sea/northern Africa to Ireland Large intertidal rock pools and lagoons and shallow subtidal shores	158,159
<i>Dictyopteris polypodioides</i> [<i>Dictyopteris membranacea</i> (Retired)]	Thallus flat and leaf-like, to 300 mm long and 20 - 30 mm broad; fronds olive to yellow-brown, translucent, and somewhat regularly dichotomously forked with a prominent midrib extending to the apices. Margins sometimes split to midrib. Has an unpleasant smell shortly after collection, which degenerates quickly.	Ireland (except for east coast), west Scotland, Wales, southwest England, to Portugal and West Africa Large pools at low water and shallow subtidal shores	158,159
<i>Fucus serratus</i> (serrated wrack, saw wrack, toothed wrack)	Dichotomously branched fronds arising from a small disc via a short stipe; distinct midrib. Algae grows to 300 mm with terminal, compressed receptacles with warty conceptacles. It is easily recognized by its saw-toothed frond, and a lack of swollen receptacles.	Widely distributed on all coasts of Britain and Ireland. Baltic Sea to Spain and Canary Islands. Introduced to Nova Scotia and has spread to New Brunswick and Maine. Zone forming on sheltered and semi-exposed shores.	158-160
<i>Fucus spiralis</i> (jelly bags, spiral wrack, flat wrack spiraled wrack)	Fronds lack bladders; elongated air bladders are on either side of the midrib. Fronds have twisted, dichotomous branches. This species is up to 20 cm long, attached to the substratum with a discoid holdfast. Color ranges from dark brown to olive-green.	North Atlantic and North Pacific; Baltic Sea to Morocco/Canary Islands and New York; Alaska to California. Introduced to Mediterranean Sea (France). Uppermost species of <i>Fucus</i> that occurs on shore.	160

Table 5. General characteristics and geographic distribution of several brown algae species

Species (common name)	Description	Distribution/Habitat/Ecology	References
<i>Fucus vesiculosus</i> (paddy tang, red fucus, dyers fucus, swine tang, sea ware, bladder, rockweed, bladderwrack, popping wrack, wrack)	Paired bladders occur on either side of a prominent midrib. Frond is generally not strongly spiraled and receptacles do not have a sterile rim, and frond does not have a serrated margin. Attached by a small, strong disc which gives rise to a short stipe. This species is 15 to 90 cm long and 0.6 to 2.5 cm wide. Reproductive receptacles are swollen areas at tips of fronds that have many flask-shaped cavities called conceptacles, which house male and female reproductive structures known as antheridia (borne on antheridiophores) and oogonia (containing 8 eggs), respectively. Eggs and sperm are liberated onto surface of receptacles and a pheromone (sex-attracting substance) is released by eggs that attract sperm. Fertilization results in a zygote that forms a new <i>Fucus</i> adult.	North Atlantic (Canadian Arctic, Russia, White Sea, Baltic Sea) south to Canary Islands and West Indies Midshore zone A bladderless form occurs on more wave-exposed shores in the NE Atlantic. Grows in various conditions, from saline lagoons to exposed rocky shores, as well as on sheltered rocky shores. Forms dense canopies.	158-160,162
<i>Halidrys siliquosa</i> (podweed, sea oak)	Thallus 30 - 130 cm long, tawny to yellow-brown ochre, tough and leathery; attached by a large, discoid holdfast, giving rise to compressed, irregularly alternately branched fronds, with several orders of close branching in the same plane. Pod-shaped, segmented air bladders are produced replacing some lateral branches. Reproductive conceptacles forming in swollen conceptacles at apices of branches	Northeast Atlantic (Norway/Baltic Sea to Morocco) Large, mid-intertidal pools, often dominating in very large, sunny pools, but more often forming occasional stands. Occasionally forming extensive forests in shallow subtidal to about 10 m, generally in current-exposed locations. Widespread and common. Halidrys produces meroditerpenoids that seemingly act as antifouling agents preventing other organisms adhering to surface of the algae.	158,159
<i>Halopteris scoparia</i> (sea flax weed) also known as <i>Sphacelaris scoparia</i>	<i>Stypocaulon scoparium</i> may be synonymous	Northwest Atlantic (Baltic Sea to Canary Islands) and Mediterranean Sea	158
<i>Himantalia elongata</i> (thongweed, buttonweed, sea spaghetti, sea thong, sea haricots)	Long thong-like fronds, basal mushroom-like buttons. Thallus consisting of a button-shaped vegetative thallus to 30 mm wide and 25 mm high, and a long, narrow, strap-like, sparingly branched, light yellow-brown reproductive receptacle to 2 m in length and up to 10 mm in width, on which conceptacles are borne. Buttons, initially club-shaped but later mushroom-like, develop from zygotes in late summer, mature in winter, and begin to form reproductive receptacles in January/February. Some 4-6 dichotomies are produced at this stage, and fronds then elongate and thicken, developing no further branches, and become reproductively mature in July-September.	Northwest Atlantic Ocean (Scandinavia to Spain) Gently sloping rocks, particularly on semi-wave-exposed shore, on which they may form a distinct zone at low water. Sparse populations sometimes develop in sheltered lagoons where thealgae are more yellow and less flattened.	158,159
<i>Laminaria cloustoni</i> [<i>Laminaria hyperborea</i>] (kelp, may weed, kelpie, liver weed, mirkle, pennant weed, strapwrack, cuvie, tangle, split whip wrack, sea rods, forest kelp, northern kelp)	Dark brown, to 2 m in length; with a claw-like, conical holdfast, a rough, rigid stipe which generally rises up out of the water, and is covered in epiphytes when older, and a laminate blade to 1.5 m long dividing into finger-like segments. Stipe is rugose (rough) when older, circular in cross-section, and snaps easily when bent; the holdfast is conical.	Northwest Atlantic Ocean (Scandinavia to Spain) Common at extreme low water in wave-exposed areas, and in the subtidal in optically clear water growing on rock to a depth of 32 m. Forms extensive closed communities at depths of 0 - 24 m. There are usually large quantities of epiphytic red algae growing on the older stipes; the old fronds are cast off in spring and new ones grow below for a time.	158,159
<i>Laminaria digitata</i> (kelp)	Dark brown, to 2 m in length; with a claw-like holdfast, a smooth, flexible stipe, and a laminate blade to 1.5 m long split into finger-like segments. The stipe is oval in cross-section, and does not snap easily when bent. Underwater algae are more golden in color in sunlight.	North Atlantic (Arctic Canada/ Baltic Sea/Russia to Spain and New England) Very common in lower intertidal and shallow subtidal growing on rock. May form extensive meadows at low tide.	158,159
<i>Laminaria hyperborea</i> (kelpie, liver weed, mirkle, pennant weed, strapwrack, cuvie, tangle, split whip wrack)	Dark brown, to 2 m in length; with a claw-like, conical holdfast, a rough, rigid stipe which generally sticks up out of the water, and is covered in epiphytes when older, and a laminate blade to 1.5 m long dividing into finger-like segments. Stipe is rugose (rough) when older, circular in cross-section, and snaps easily when bent; the holdfast is conical.	Northeast Atlantic (Scandinavia/Iceland to Spain and Canary Islands) Common at extreme low water in wave-exposed areas, and in subtidal in optically clear water growing on rock to a depth of 32 m. Forms extensive closed communities at depths of 0-24 m; there are usually large quantities of epiphytic red algae growing on the older stipes; the old fronds are cast off in spring and new ones grow below for a time.	158,159,163

Table 5. General characteristics and geographic distribution of several brown algae species

Species (common name)	Description	Distribution/Habitat/Ecology	References
<i>Laminaria saccharina</i> [The accepted scientific name is <i>Saccharina latissima</i>] (sea belt, poor man's weather glass, sweet wrack, sugar wrack, sugar tang, oarweed, tangle, kelp, sugar sea belt, sweet tangle, sugarwrack, zuckertang)	Yellow brown, to 3 m in length; with a claw-like holdfast, a small, smooth, flexible stipe, and an undivided laminate blade to 3 m long with parallel, ruffled sides and an elongated, tongue-like appearance. Frond is characteristically dimpled with regular bullations (depressions). Stipe is relatively small, cylindrical in section and more flexible than those of <i>Laminaria digitata</i> and <i>Laminaria hyperborea</i> . It is only species in the NE Atlantic Ocean with an undivided frond, distinct bullations, and a frilly margin.	Circumboreal (Atlantic Ocean: Canada, Scandinavia, Greenland, Iceland to Galicia, Spain and Maine, but not known in the Bay of Biscay; Pacific Ocean: Alaska to California, Japan, Korea, Central Polynesia, India, New Zealand) Intertidal pools and occasional in shallow subtidal areas, becoming more abundant at low water in sheltered localities with fast-moving water, such as rapids systems. In subtidal, it is characteristic of intermittently disturbed areas.	158,159
<i>Macrocystis pyrifera</i> (giant kelp, sea ivy, giant pacific kelp)	This species reaches 45 meters long and grow in waters 6 - 20 (possibly up to 80) m deep, and grow at up to 30 cm per day. Now believed to be a monospecific genera ranging from intertidal to deep water with environments dictating morphology.	Eastern and southern Pacific Ocean in both hemispheres (Alaska to New Zealand and Australia) Dominant canopy-forming algae in southern and central California.	158,164,165
<i>Pelvetia canaliculata</i> (channeled wrack, cow tang)	This species is 80-120 mm long, yellow-brown in color, turning black when dry, and often so dry that fronds disintegrate when trodden upon; regularly dichotomously branched with a distinct channel on underside (side nearest rock), which holds moisture and apparently helps algae survive at very high levels on shore. Reproduction in conceptacles visible as dots on warty terminal receptacles. Usually infected by a fungus which may assist in allowing it to survive high in intertidal zone.	NE Atlantic from the Faroe Islands to Portugal Occurring very high on shore, generally above mean high water neap tides, on wave-exposed and sheltered shores, but absent from very exposed rocky shores.	158-160
<i>Sargassum muticum</i>	Thallus bushy, elongated, yellowish-tawny to dark brown, generally to 4 m long; tough, cylindrical, repeatedly alternately pinnately branched to the third or fourth order; whorls of distinctly flattened sculpted leaves at the base (resembling the leaves of Holly); with characteristic rounded-elliptical air bladders above and below, formed terminally. Reproductive receptacles below, formed in the axils of spiny leaves; spectacularly fecund. Basal holdfast penetrating and conical, persisting for several years. Reproductive plants detach easily, and continue to reproduce while drifting, and spreading the reproductive zygotes that develop on the surfaces of the receptacles. Terminal air bladders below; receptacles in the axils of spiny leaves.	Native to Japan; spread to China and Korea. Invasive in France, Spain and Portugal; western Mediterranean; Alaska south to Mexico. Throughout the intertidal in pools, but largest and commonest at low water.	158,159
<i>Undaria pinnatifida</i> (sea mustard, precious sea grass, wakame)	Thallus laminate, yellowish to dark brown, usually 1 - 2 m, occasionally 3 m or more in length; holdfast spreading, dichotomously branched and claw-like, giving rise to a flattened oar-like stipe with a "fried-egg" like margin with small proliferations and basally with beautifully lobed sporophylls that coil around it when mature; stipe continuing into the fond as a flattened midrib that bears broadly lobed lacinate fronds with a roughly pyramidal shape. Frilly sporophylls coiling around the base of the flattened stipe at the base. A similar flattened midrib is not found in any other kelp in the Atlantic. <i>Alaria esculenta</i> has a midrib which is not flattened and the frond of <i>Alaria</i> is not lobed, although it may be similarly lacinate.	Native to Pacific Russia, Japan, China and Korea. NE Ireland, S England, NW France, NW Spain, Mediterranean Lower intertidal and very shallow subtidal (no more than a few m), particularly in sheltered locations, growing particularly on marinas, buoys, and similar floating structures in harbors. Often occurring on boat-hulls.	158

Table 6. Chemical and physical properties of some brown algae-derived ingredients

Property	Value	Reference
Ascophyllum Nodosum Extract		
Physical Form	Liquid	166,167
	Viscous liquid	168
	Solid flakes	6
Color	Black	6,166
	Dark brown	167
	Dark brown (aq. ext)	168
Odor	Marine-like/Fish-like	166,167
	Characteristic, seaweed (aq. ext)	168
	Odorless	6
Density/Specific Gravity	1.17	166
	1.1 (aq. ext.)	168
Bulk Density (g/mL)	0.58	6
Viscosity kg/(s m)	< 0.1	166
Melting Point °C	0 (aq. ext.)	168
	> 300	6
Boiling Point °C	100	166
	100 (aq. ext.)	168
	65 – 96	167
Water Solubility g/L @ 20 °C & pH 7.4 – 7.5 @ 20 °C	> 10,000	6
	100%	166,167
	100%	168
Other Solubility g/L	Acetone @ 22 °C	6
	Ethyl acetate @ 22 °C	6
	Methanol @ 22 °C	6
	log P _{ow}	-3.3 est.
Particle size	> 0.250 mm, 93.5%	6
	< 0.045 mm, none	
Ascophyllum Nodosum Powder		
Physical Form	Flakes or powder	169
	Powder	170
Color	Olive green	169
	Green	170
Odor	Marine-like	169
	Characteristic, fish-like	170
Water Solubility g/L	Insoluble	169
Ecklonia Cava Extract		
Physical Form	Powder (alcohol ext)	9
Color	Brown (alcohol ext)	9
Halidrys Siliquosa Extract (aq.)		
Physical Form	Liquid	65
pH	5	65
Density	1.02	65

aq. = aqueous; ext. = extract

Table 7. Methods of manufacture for brown algae-derived ingredients

Ingredient (characterization)	Method of Manufacture	Reference
Alaria Esculenta Extract	trade name mixture consisting of Alaria Esculenta Extract in butylene glycol and water: harvesting/identification → washing → grinding → extraction with the solvents and butylene glycol and water → filtration → quality control → packaging → quality control	24
Alaria Esculenta Extract	trade name mixture consisting of Alaria Esculenta Extract in butylene glycol and water – dried before extraction: harvesting/identification → washing → drying → grinding → extraction with the solvents butylene glycol and water → filtration → quality control → packaging → quality control	24
Alaria Esculenta Extract	trade name mixture containing Alaria Esculenta Extract in Caprylic/Capric Triglycerides: harvesting/identification → drying → grinding → extraction with solvent caprylic/capric triglyceride → filtration → quality control → packaging → quality control	25
Ascophyllum Nodosum Extract	A trade name mixture containing 4.7% Ascophyllum Nodosum Extract in 94.5% water, reported a manufacturing process consisting of grinding the algae, extraction by water, fucoidan purification and ultrafiltration.	26
Ascophyllum Nodosum Extract	The species <i>Ascophyllum nodosum</i> is grinded, extracted by water, then undergoes fucoidan purification and ultrafiltration.	27
Cladosiphon Okamurae Extract (high in fucoidan)	<i>Cladosiphon okamuranus</i> is hydrolyzed in 0.05 M or 0.5 M hydrochloric acid at 80°C for 30 min and then is neutralized with sodium hydroxide. Salt is removed by electro dialysis and then hydrolysate is lyophilized.	52
Cystoseira Tamariscifolia Extract	Cystoseira Tamariscifolia Extract and Caprylic/Capric Triglycerides: extraction with supercritical carbon dioxide	54
Dictyopteris Polypodioides Extract (high fractions of C ₁₁ hydrocarbons and sulfur compounds)	Air-dried algae material is extracted with diethyl ether. Solvent is removed vacuum distillation leaving a crude concrete extract. Crude extract is treated with hydrodistillation followed by liquid-liquid extraction with diethyl ether to obtain the essential oil.	28
Dictyopteris Polypodioides Extract (high fraction of sulfur compounds)	Air-dried algae material is extracted with diethyl ether. Solvent is removed by vacuum distillation leaving a crude concrete extract. Crude extract is then subjected to supercritical fluid (CO ₂) extraction.	28
Dictyopteris Polypodioides Extract (high fractions of sesquiterpenes)	Air-dried algae material is extracted with diethyl ether. Solvent is removed vacuum distillation leaving a crude concrete extract. Crude extract is mixed with water and irradiated in a microwave oven (focused microwave-assisted hydrodistillation).	28
Ecklonia Cava Extract	Fresh, semidried <i>Ecklonia cava</i> seaweed is dried and crushed followed by alcohol (i.e., food-grade ethanol) extraction, purification, filtration, and concentration steps.	9
Ecklonia Cava Extract	Small pieces of <i>Ecklonia cava</i> fronds (~ 5 cm; 30 kg) are placed in 750 L of distilled water in the presence of enzymes (300 g pectinase and 300 g cellulase). Suspension is stirred for 24 h at 50°C, centrifuged at 3000 g for 20 min at 4°C, and vacuum filtered. Three volumes of 60% ethanol are then added for 18 h of extraction. Solution is filtered and concentrated using a rotary evaporator. Concentrated solution is made into powder using a spray dryer.	94
Ecklonia Cava Extract (high in polyphenols)	Dried <i>Ecklonia cava</i> powder is extracted with ethanol, concentrated, and freeze-dried.	29
Fucus Spiralis Extract	trade name mixture containing Fucus Spiralis Extract (“1 - 3% dry extract” (further details not provided)) in butylene glycol and water: harvesting/identification → washing → grinding → extraction with the solvents butylene glycol and water → addition of phenyllactic acid → filtration → quality control → packaging → quality control	30
Fucus Vesiculosus Extract	trade name mixture containing water, alcohol and Fucus Vesiculosus Extract: dried raw material → extract with 30% ethanolic solution → filtrate → concentration → filtrate → packaging	31
Fucus Vesiculosus Extract	trade name mixture containing sodium sulfate and Fucus Vesiculosus Extract: dried raw material → extract with 30% ethanolic solution → filtrate → concentration → add anhydrous sodium sulfate → packaging	31
Fucus Vesiculosus Extract	trade name mixture containing Fucus Vesiculosus Extract in caprylic/capric triglyceride: harvesting/identification → washing → grinding → extraction with the solvent caprylic/capric triglyceride → filtration → quality control → packaging → quality control	32
Fucus Vesiculosus Extract (28.8% polyphenols)	Ethanol (30% - 35% aq.) extraction of <i>Fucus vesiculosus</i> (10% w/w) is performed at room temperature under mechanical stirring for 4 h. After filtration on a filter press, liquid phase undergoes an initial purification step to remove alginates by precipitation in presence of excess calcium chloride. Liquid phase undergoes a second purification step involving diafiltration to remove iodine and low molecular weight compounds. Extract is freeze-dried to obtain a powder extract.	95
Fucus Vesiculosus Extract (18% polyphenols plus 0.0012% fucoxanthin)	Ethanol (50% - 70% aq.) extraction of <i>Fucus vesiculosus</i> (10% w/w) is performed to solubilize a greater amount of carotenoids at room temperature under mechanical stirring for 2 h. After filtration on a filter press, liquid phase undergoes an initial purification step to remove alginates by precipitating them in presence of excess calcium chloride. After solid-liquid separation, a second extraction is performed under same conditions. Two liquid phases are then blended, submitted to diafiltration to remove iodine and low molecular weight compounds, and freeze-dried to obtain a powder extract.	95
Fucus Vesiculosus Extract	Dried algae material is extracted with water for 24 h, with stirring at room temperature. Residue is then removed by filtration to give a slightly brown colored extract.	49
Hizikia Fusiforme Extract	trade name mixture containing water butylene glycol and Hizikia Fusiforme Extract: dried raw material → extract with 80% ethanolic solution → filtrate → concentration → add 50% 1,3-butylene glycol solution → filtrate → packaging	31

Table 7. Methods of manufacture for brown algae-derived ingredients

Ingredient (characterization)	Method of Manufacture	Reference
Laminaria Digitata Extract (high in oligosaccharides)	An aqueous extraction is conducted followed by enzymatic depolymerization that breaks the polysaccharide into oligosaccharides (e.g., smaller polymers with 3 to 10 sugar components). Final process involves chelating oligosaccharide with zinc sulfate (0.1% zinc-pyrrolidone).	34
Laminaria Digitata Extract	trade name mixture containing Laminaria Digitata Extract in caprylic/capric triglyceride: harvesting/identification → washing → drying → grinding → extraction with the solvent caprylic/capric Triglyceride → filtration → quality control → packaging → quality control	33
Laminaria Digitata Extract	trade name mixture containing Laminaria Digitata Extract in water and propylene glycol: harvesting/identification → washing → grinding → extraction with the solvents water and propylene glycol → addition of methylparaben and propylparaben → filtration → quality control → packaging → quality control	35
Laminaria Hyperborea Extract	trade name mixture containing Laminaria Hyperborea Extract in water: harvesting/identification → washing → grinding → extraction with water → addition of benzylic alcohol and dehydroacetic alcohol → filtration → quality control → packaging → packaging → quality control	36
Laminaria Japonica Extract (low-molecular weight fucoidan)	Enzyme hydrolysis	57
Laminaria Japonica Extract	Algae is rinsed with tap water to remove salt and dried in an air dryer at 60°C for 40 h. Dried material is ground with a hammer mill, and powder stored at -20°C until used. Dried powder (2.5 kg) is extracted 3 times with 96% (v/v) ethanol for 3 h at 70°C. Combined extracts are filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure to obtain ethanol extracts	51
Laminaria Japonica Extract	Freshly collected algae material is air dried with a fan for 24 h then ground into a fine powder. 5 g of powder is added to 100 mL of 1:1 water-propylene glycol at room temperature for 1 day. This procedure is repeated 2 times, and the combined extracts were stored at -20°C until use.	56
Laminaria Japonica Extract, Nereocystis Leutkeana, and Macrocystis Pyrifera	trade name mixture containing Laminaria Japonica, Nereocystis Leutkeana, and Macrocystis Pyrifera Extract: test of acceptance → processing (mechanical grinding/milling) → extraction with pentaerythrityl tetraethylhexanoate at specific pH and temperature for specific duration → filtration → batch adjustments (refiltration) → sample for QC → pack → sample for Micro → shipping	37
Laminaria Japonica Powder	Dried algae is pulverized to desired size.	53
Laminaria Ochroleuca Extract	trade name mixture consisting on Laminaria Ochroleuca extract in Caprylic/Capric Triglyceride: harvesting/identification → washing → grinding → extraction with the solvent caprylic/capric triglyceride → filtration → quality control → packaging → quality control	38
Laminaria Saccharina Extract	trade name mixture containing Laminaria Saccharina Extract in water and propylene glycol: harvesting/identification → washing → grinding → extraction with solvents: water + propylene glycol → mixture (addition of preservatives) → filtration → quality control	39
Laminaria Saccharina Extract	trade name mixture containing Laminaria Saccharina Extract (“1-2.5% dry extract” (no other details provided)) in water and butylene glycol: harvesting/identification → washing → grinding → extraction with the solvents water and butylene glycol → mixture → addition of preservatives → filtration → quality control	39
Macrocystis Pyrifera Extract	Macrocystis Pyrifera Extract (“1-3% dry extract (no other details provided)) – extracted in water with added methylpropanediol: harvesting → washing → grinding → extraction (water) → centrifugation → filtration → addition of 20% Methylpropanediol → filtration	40
Pelvetia Canaliculata Extract	trade name mixture containing Pelvetia Canaliculata Extract (“1 - 3% dry extract” (no other details provided)) in butylene glycol and water: harvesting/identification → washing → drying → grinding → extraction with the solvents vegetable butylene glycol and water → filtration → quality control → packaging → quality control	41
Pelvetia Canaliculata Extract	trade name mixture containing Pelvetia Canaliculata Extract (“1 - 3% dry extract” (no other details provided)) in water and propylene glycol: harvesting/identification → washing → grinding → extraction with the solvents water and propylene glycol → addition of methylparaben and propylparaben → filtration → quality control → packaging → quality control	41
Pelvetia Canaliculata Extract	trade name mixture containing Pelvetia Canaliculata Extract (“0.5 - 3% dry extract” (no other details provided)) in water: harvesting/identification → washing → grinding → extraction with water → addition of benzylic alcohol and dehydroacetic acid → filtration → addition of trisodium citrate dehydrate → filtration → quality control → packaging → quality control	42
Pelvetia Canaliculata Extract	trade name mixture containing Pelvetia Canaliculata Extract in water: harvesting/identification → washing → grinding → extraction with water → addition of phenoxyethanol and sorbic acid → filtration → quality control → packaging → quality control	43
Pelvetia Canaliculata and Laminaria Digitata Extract	trade name mixture containing Pelvetia Canaliculata and Laminaria Digitata extracted in propylene glycol with panthenol: harvesting/identification → washing → grinding → extraction with the solvent propylene glycol → filtration → quality control → mixture → filtration → quality control → packaging → quality control	44
Pelvetia Canaliculata and Laminaria Digitata Extract	trade name mixture containing Pelvetia Canaliculata and Laminaria Digitata extracted in butylene glycol with preservatives: harvesting/identification → washing → grinding → extraction with butylene glycol → filtration → quality control → mixture → filtration → quality control → packaging → quality control	44
Pelvetia Canaliculata and Laminaria Digitata Extract	trade name mixture containing Pelvetia Canaliculata and Laminaria Digitata extracted in butylene glycol without preservatives: harvesting/identification → washing → grinding → extraction with butylene glycol → filtration → quality control → mixture → filtration → quality control → packaging → quality control	45
Sargassum Fusiforme Extract and Undaria Pinnatifida Extract (high in fucosterol and phytol)	Microwave-assisted extraction coupled with high-speed countercurrent chromatography.	46

Table 7. Methods of manufacture for brown algae-derived ingredients

Ingredient (characterization)	Method of Manufacture	Reference
Sargassum Fusiforme Extract and Undaria Pinnatifida Extract (high in lipids and antioxidant compounds)	Supercritical fluid extraction and subcritical water extraction.	46
Sargassum Glaucescens Extract	trade name mixture containing 20% Sargassum Glaucescens Extract, 79% water and 1% phenoxyethanol: grinding → extraction → preservative addition → sterilization → filtration → packaging → storage	171
Undaria Pinnatifida Extract (high in fucoidan)	Algae material is hydrolyzed in 0.05 or 0.5 M hydrochloric acid at 80°C for 30 min then neutralized with 1 M sodium hydroxide. Resulting material is desalted by gel filtration and hydrolysate lyophilized.	66
Undaria Pinnatifida Extract	trade name mixture containing Undaria Pinnatifida Extract in water and propylene glycol: harvesting/identification → drying → grinding → extraction with solvents water and propylene glycol, and addition of preservatives (methylparaben and propylparaben) → filtration → quality control → packaging → quality control	48
Undaria Pinnatifida Extract	trade name mixture containing Undaria Pinnatifida Extract in Caprylic/Capric Triglyceride: harvesting of fertile sporophytes → fragment isolation of gametophyte → culture in liquid medium → gametophyte separation → freeze-dried gametophyte → quality control → extraction with the solvent caprylic/capric triglyceride → filtration → quality control → packaging → quality control	47

Abbreviations: aq. = aqueous; HPLC = high-performance liquid chromatography

Table 8. Constituents in brown algae

Constituent(s)	Description
Alkaloids	Tyramine (4-hydroxyphenylethylamine) has been detected in <i>Laminaria saccharina</i> . ¹⁷² The alkaloids found in marine algae may be divided into three groups: phenylethylamine alkaloids, indole and halogenated indole alkaloids, and other alkaloids.
Amino acids	Brown algae contain all of the essential amino acids and are greater in threonine, valine, leucine, lysine, glycine, and alanine than are the green and blue algae. ⁴⁶ <i>Fucus spiralis</i> was reported to contain 63.5% essential amino acids per total protein, containing leucine (5.5 mg/g protein), isoleucine (15.3 mg/g protein), lysine (12.5 mg/g protein), glutamic acid (12.1 mg/g protein), arginine (11.7 mg/g protein), serine (11.5 mg/g protein), valine (11.1 mg/g protein), and threonine (10.9 mg/g protein). ¹⁷³
Betaines	Glycinebetaine, γ -aminobutyric acid betaine, and/or trigonelline have been found in <i>Alaria esculenta</i> , <i>Ecklonia maxima</i> , <i>Ecklonia radiata</i> , <i>Eisenia arborea</i> , <i>Laminaria digitata</i> , <i>Macrocystis pyrifera</i> , <i>Nereocystis luetkeana</i> , <i>Saccharina angustata</i> , <i>Saccharina japonica</i> , and <i>Undaria pinnatifida</i> . ¹⁷⁴
Iodine	The concentration of iodine in <i>Alaria esculenta</i> was reported to have a range of approximately 200 mg/kg (dry wt) to approximately 700 mg/kg (dry wt) depending on year, season, location, and whether it was collected in the wild, a monoculture, or an integrated culture. ¹⁷⁵ <i>Fucus vesiculosus</i> contains between 0.03% and 0.2% iodine in dried material. ¹⁷⁶ The iodine content is highest in the spring in freshly cut young blades. In <i>Laminaria digitata</i> , iodine content is highest in late autumn and winter (0.75% to 1.20% dry wt) and lowest in summer (0.25% to 0.60% dry wt). ¹⁷⁷ Iodine content for <i>Fucus spiralis</i> and <i>Laminaria ochroleuca</i> have been reported to be 232.7 and 883.5 mg/kg dry wt. ¹⁷³
Laminarins	Laminarins are basically a class of low molecular weight storage β -glucans. These are composed of (1,3)- β -D-glucan and can be up to 35% of the dry weight of brown algae. ¹⁷⁸
Lipids	Fucosterol and fucosterol derivatives are present in brown algae. ⁴⁶ Tocopherols, and sterols are also found in brown algae.
Omega-3 fatty acids	Omega-3 fatty acids include stearidonic acid and hexadecatetraenoic acid. ¹⁷⁹ These make up to 40% of the total fatty acid content in <i>Undaria pinnatifida</i> .
Phenolic compounds, polyphenols, and phlorotannins	Phlorotannins are found in brown algae. ⁴⁶ Flavonoids are integral structural components of cell walls (e.g., eckol, phlorofucofuroeckol A, dieckol, catechin, and epigallocatechin).
Pheromones	The pheromones include lamoxirene 4 (e.g., <i>Agarum cribrosum</i> , <i>Ecklonia radiata</i> , <i>Eisenia arborea</i> , <i>Laminaria digitata</i> , <i>Laminaria hyperborea</i> , <i>Laminaria japonica</i> , <i>Laminaria saccharina</i> , <i>Saccharina angustata</i> , <i>Undaria pinnatifida</i> , <i>Macrocystis pyrifera</i> , and <i>Nereocystis luetkeana</i>), fucoserratene 6 (e.g., <i>Fucus serratus</i> , <i>Fucus spiralis</i> , and <i>Fucus vesiculosus</i>), hormonsirene 8 (e.g., <i>Durvillaea antarctica</i>), and finavarrene 12 (<i>Ascophyllum nodosum</i>). The major constituents of the essential oil of <i>Dictpopteris polypodioides</i> are C ₁₁ hydrocarbons sulfur products such as 3-hexyl-4,5-dithiacycloheptanone. ²⁸
Phytohormones	Auxins (plant hormones that cause the elongation of cells in shoots and are involved in regulating plant growth), such as indoleacetic acid are found in the genera <i>Macrocystis</i> , <i>Laminaria</i> , <i>Fucus</i> , <i>Ascophyllum</i> . ^{46,180} Cytokinins (genera <i>Fucus</i> , <i>Ascophyllum</i> , <i>Sargassum</i> , <i>Macrocystis</i>), gibberellins (genus <i>Fucus</i>), abscisic acid (genera <i>Ascophyllum</i> , <i>Laminaria</i>), and polyamines (genus <i>Dyctiota</i>) are also found.
Pigments	Carotenoids including fucoxanthin, β -carotene, zeaxanthin, violaxanthin, and antheraxanthin are found in brown algae. ⁴⁶ These vary with season.
Protein	The protein content of algae varies according to species and season. ^{14,46} In general, the protein fraction of brown algae is low (1% to 24% dry wt.) compared with that of green or red algae (4% to 50% dry wt). Except for the species <i>Undaria pinnatifida</i> , which has a protein content between 11% and 24% (dry wt.), most commercial brown algae have a protein content lower than 15% (dry wt; e.g., <i>Ascophyllum nodosum</i> , 3% to 15%; <i>Fucus vesiculosus</i> , <i>Himantalia elongate</i> , and <i>Laminaria digitata</i> , 8% to 15%). The protein content of <i>Fucus</i> sp. tend to range from 3% to 11% (e.g., <i>Fucus spiralis</i> , 9.71% dry weight). ¹⁷³
Sterols	Sterols found in brown algae include desmosterol, ergosterol, fucosterol, cholesterol, campesterol, stigmasterol, and β -sterol. ^{60,61}
Terpenoids	Terpenes, phenolic compounds, and meroterpenes make up the three major classes of secondary metabolites in brown seaweed. ⁴⁶

Table 9. Constituents in *Ascophyllum nodosum*, *Fucus vesiculosus*, and *Laminaria digitata*

	<i>Ascophyllum nodosum</i> (ppm) ¹⁸¹	<i>Fucus vesiculosus</i> (ppm) ¹⁸²	<i>Fucus vesiculosus</i> (ppm) ¹⁸¹	<i>Laminaria digitata</i> (ppm) ³⁴
Algin	NR	41300 – 500000	NR	NR
Alginic acid	NR	NR	NR	200000 – 450000
Aluminum	NR	75.0 - 631.0	NR	NR
Arsenic	NR	68.0	NR	NR
Ascorbic-acid	NR	30.0 - 258.0	NR	NR
Bromine	NR	150.0	NR	NR
Calcium	9847	3587 – 30400	11600	NR
Carbohydrates	NR	77290 – 655000	NR	10000 – 20000
β-carotene	NR	5.0 – 40.0	NR	NR
Chromium	NR	0.1 – 0.7	NR	NR
Cobalt	NR	0.2 – 1.6	NR	NR
Fat	NR	3540 – 30000	NR	10000 – 20000
Fiber	NR	98000	NR	NR
Fiber(crude)	NR	98000	NR	NR
Fiber(dietary)	NR	482000	NR	NR
Fucinicacid	NR	1000	NR	NR
Fucoidin	NR	600000	NR	20000 – 40000
Fucose	NR	240000	NR	NR
Iodine	NR	64.0 – 540.0	NR	3000 – 1100
Iron	133.4	2.0 – 16.0	189.9	NR
Kilocalories	NR	2490	NR	NR
Lead	NR	91.0	NR	NR
γ-Linolenic acid	NR	NR	NR	NR
Magnesium	8678	1023 – 8670	7320	5000 – 8000
Mannitol	NR	NR	NR	40000 – 160000
Manganese	19.6	0.9 – 7.6	82.8	NR
Mercury	NR	40.0	NR	NR
Niacin	NR	6.0 – 47.0	NR	NR
Phosphorus	NR	294.0 -2490	1935.7	NR
Potassium	37810	2490 – 21,100	37450	13000 – 38000
Selenium	NR	0.2 – 1.7	NR	NR
Silicon	NR	0.9 – 7.6	NR	NR
Sodium	45757	6620 – 56,100	21875	9000 – 22000
Sugars	NR	2360 – 20000	NR	NR
Tin	NR	3.0 – 24.0	NR	NR
Water	NR	882000	NR	730000 – 900000
Zinc	NR	0.1 – 0.6	NR	NR

NR = not reported

Table 10. Sterols in several brown algae⁶¹

	<i>Cystoseira tamariscifolia</i>	<i>Fucus spiralis</i>	<i>Sargassum vulgare</i>
Desmosterol (mg/kg)	44.1 ± 3.4	37.6 ± 3.8	47.2 ± 0.2
Ergosterol (mg/kg)	-	-	5.6 ± 0.4
Fucosterol (mg/kg)	5260.2 ± 14.9	3815.1 ± 329.5	4451.5 ± 16.7
Cholesterol (mg/kg)	500.4 ± 2.6	325.1 ± 13.5	406.3 ± 13.2
Campesterol + Stigmasterol (mg/kg)	680.9 ± 21.4	183.4 ± 0.3	303.3 ± 18.9
β-Sterol (mg/kg)	17.0 ± 0.3	-	15.2 ± 2.8
Brassicasterol (mg/kg)	NR	NR	NR
Saringosterol (mg/kg)	NR	NR	NR
24-ketocholesterol (mg/kg)	NR	NR	NR
Total^a (mg/kg)	6502.6	4361.0	5229.1

NR = not reported

- = not found

^a Total may not be exact due to rounding.

Table 11. Constituents of ethanol extracts of *Fucus spiralis* and *Sargassum vulgare*⁶³

Constituent	Range (if provide; ppm)	
	<i>Fucus spiralis</i> extract	<i>Sargassum vulgare</i> extract
Arachidic Acid	ND	ND
Arachidonic Acid	465.6 ± 29.0	ND
Cholesterol	ND	127.4 ± 11.6
Eicosapentaenoic Acid	217.0 ± 11.4	ND
Fucosterol	317.6 ± 9.4	257.6 ± 43.6
γ-Linolenic Acid	ND	2413.6 ± 57.6
Mannitol (Total)	1273.8 ± 34.8	394.6 ± 15.2
Myristic Acid	69.8 ± 2.7	ND
Palmitic Acid	606.0 ± 20.6	340.4 ± 95.0
Phloroglucinol	< LOD	ND
Proline	396.8 ± 96.8	117.4 ± 11.0
β-Sitosterol	ND	ND
Stearic Acid	208.4 ± 21.4	204.0 ± 26.0
Vaccenic Acid	21,690.6 ± 1667.6	2848.6 ± 71.2

LOD = limit of detection; ND = not detected

Table 12. Composition of a 50/50 water/propylene glycol extract of *Laminaria japonica*⁵⁶

Constituent	Amount
Constituent Groups (mg/g)	
Carbohydrate	6
Sugars	5
Proteins	2
Crude fat	2
Saturated fatty acid	1
Unsaturated fatty acid	None detected
Amino Acids (mg/L)	
Alanine	42.3
Ammonium chloride	16.2
Arginine	20.3
Aspartic acid	424.7
Glutamic acid	689.4
Glycine	1.7
Hydroxyproline	381.4
Phosphoserine	3.7
Serine	8.6
Threonine	4.2
Minerals (mg/g)	
Sodium	404
Calcium	300
Potassium	1022
Magnesium	35
Iron	0.5
Zinc	0.2

Table 13. Composition of enzyme hydrolysis extracts of *Laminaria japonica*⁵⁷

Constituent	Concentration (% w/w)	
	<i>Laminaria japonica</i> extract ⁵⁷	
Ash	4.1 ± 0.1	
Fat	0.6 ± 0.1	
Fucose	85.9	
Moisture	3.9 ± 0.8	
Monosaccharides (neutral)	NR	
Protein	4.3 ± 0.3%	
Sulfate	28.4 ± 2.1	

NR = not reported

Table 14. Specifications of an alcohol extract of *Ecklonia cava* for use as a food supplement⁹

Parameter	Specification
Phlorotannin	90 ± 5.0%
Dieckol	6.6% – 9.9%
Moisture content	< 5%
Ash	< 5%
Insoluble substances	Negative
Substances not originating from <i>E. cava</i>	Negative
Viable cell count	< 3000 CFU/g
<i>Staphylococcus aureus</i>	Negative
Molds and yeasts	< 300 CFU/g
<i>Salmonella</i> spp.	Negative
Coliforms	Negative
Lead	< 3 mg/kg
Mercury	< 0.1 mg/kg
Cadmium	< 3 mg/kg
Arsenic	< 25 mg/kg
Iodine	150.0 – 650.0 mg/kg
Sieving size	> 60 (0.250 mm)

CFU = colony-forming unit

Table 15. Constituents of desalinated *Undaria pinnatifida* powder⁶⁷

Constituent	Amount (mg/g)
Ash	147
Calcium	13.6
Copper	0.00130
Dietary fiber	532
Iron	0.107
Lipid	14
Magnesium	13.4
Protein	209
Sodium	25.4
Zinc	0.02

Table 16. Flavonoid content of brown algae species (µg/g dry weight)⁶⁸

Flavonoid	<i>Undaria pinnatifida</i>	<i>Hizikia fusiformis</i>	<i>Ecklonia cava</i>	<i>Sargassum muticum</i>
Rutin	457 ± 6.3	-	2730 ± 190	-
Quercitrin	202 ± 26	-	-	-
Hesperidin	-	-	4240 ± 380	+
Myricetin	-	-	-	-
Morin	1020 ± 110	1010 ± 11	2360 ± 280	927 ± 30
Caffeic acid	53.6 ± 60	-	-	-

-: not detected; + = trace amounts detected

Table 17. Fragrance allergens analyzed in trade name mixtures containing brown algae-derived ingredients

Allergen	Amount (ppm)		
	Undaria Pinnatifida Cell Culture Extract (0.5-2%) ¹⁸³	Hydrolyzed Fucus Vesiculosus Protein (98.9%) ¹⁸⁴	Sargassum Filipendula Extract (1.3%) ¹⁸⁵
Alpha-IsoMethyl Ionone	< 0.02	0.00	< 0.02
Amyl Cinnamal	< 0.10	0.00	< 0.10
Anise Alcohol	< 0.00	0.00	< 0.00
Benzyl Alcohol	< 0.01	0.00	< 0.01
Benzyl Benzoate	< 0.09	0.00	< 0.09
Benzyl Cinnamate	< 0.30	0.00	< 0.30
Benzyl Salicylate	< 0.06	0.00	< 0.06
Butylphenyl Methylpropional	< 0.50	0.00	< 0.50
Cinnamal	< 0.01	0.00	< 0.01
Cinnamyl Alcohol	< 0.30	0.00	< 0.30
Citral	< 1.00	0.00	< 1.00
Citronellol	< 1.00	0.00	< 1.00
Coumarin	< 0.00	0.00	< 0.00
Eugenol	< 0.70	0.00	< 0.70
Farnesol	< 0.04	0.00	< 0.04
Geraniol	< 0.08	0.00	< 0.08
Hexyl Cinnamal	< 0.40	0.00	< 0.40
Hydroxycitronellal	< 1.00	0.00	< 1.00
Hydroxymethylpentyl 3-Cyclohexene carboxaldehyde	< 0.00	0.00	< 0.00
Isoeugenol	< 0.06	0.00	< 0.06
Limonene	< 0.05	0.00	< 0.05
Linalool	< 0.00	0.00	< 0.00
Methyl 2-Octynoate	< 0.20	0.00	< 0.20
Evernia prunastri	< 0.02	0.00	< 0.02
Evernia furfuracea	< 0.00	0.00	< 0.00
Amylcinnamyl Alcohol	< 1.00	0.00	< 1.00

Table 18. Concentration of arsenic found in several brown algae species²⁰

Species	Arsenic Concentration	
	(mg/kg wet wt.)	(mg/kg dry wt.)
<i>Ecklonia radiata</i>	10 ²⁰	-
<i>Hizikia fusiforme</i>	10 ²⁰	-
<i>Laminaria japonica</i>	4 ²⁰	-
<i>Laminaria ochroleuca</i>	-	56.8 ± 2.4 ⁶⁹
<i>Laminaria saccharina</i>	-	52.4 ± 2.1 ⁶⁹
<i>Saccharina</i> (spp)	-	< 0.3 ¹⁸⁶
<i>Sargassum fusiforme</i>	-	67 - 96 ¹⁸⁶
<i>Sargassum thunbergii</i>	4 ²⁰	-
<i>Undaria pinnatifida</i>	2.8 - 4.5 ²⁰	< 0.3 ¹⁸⁶ 115 ± 9 ⁶⁹ (ppm)

- = no data

Table 19. Arsenic -containing moieties found in various brown algae⁶⁹

Arsenic-Containing Moiety	Amount (mg/kg)			
	<i>Laminaria ochroleuca</i>	<i>Laminaria saccharina</i>	<i>Sargassum fulvellum</i>	<i>Undaria pinnatifida</i>
Arsenic III	ND	ND	ND	ND
Arsenic V	ND	ND	69.9 ± 1.0	0.29 ± 0.03
Methylarsonate	ND	0.21 ± 0.03	ND	ND
Dimethylarsinate	0.26 ± 0.08	0.67 ± 0.02	2.1 ± 0.1	0.13 ± 0.03
Trimethylarsine oxide	ND	ND	ND	ND
Arsenobetaine	0.20 ± 0.02	0.09 ± 0.02	ND	ND
Phosphate-sug po4	6.2 ± 0.1	6.9 ± 0.1	2.2 ± 0.1	0.30 ± 0.02
Sulfonate-sug so3	39.4 ± 1.6	30.7 ± 1.2	1.80 ± 0.10	ND
Sulfate-sug so4	ND	ND	9.0 ± 0.7	ND
Glycerol-sug gly	2.71 ± 0.04	2.9 ± 0.1	1.2 ± 0.2	0.87 ± 0.03
Arsenocholine	ND	ND	ND	ND
Inorganic arsenic	ND	ND	69.9	0.29

ND = not detected

Table 20. Arsenic species found in *Laminaria japonica* and an extract of *Laminaria japonica*⁵⁷

Arsenic Species	Amount (mg/kg)	
	<i>Laminaria japonica</i>	<i>Laminaria japonica</i> extract ^a
Arsenic III	ND	ND
Arsenic V	ND	ND
Monomethylarsonic Acid	9.27 ± 0.96	1.35 ± 0.63
Dimethylarsinic Acid	9.23 ± 0.83	ND
Arsenobetaine	34.31 ± 1.21	4.77 ± 0.88
Arsenocholine	6.19 ± 2.17	ND
Arsenic (sum)	59.00 ± 1.65	6.12 ± 2.005

ND = not detected

^a Extracted by enzyme hydrolysis, high in low-molecular-weight fucoidan**Table 21. Heavy metals and arsenic in brown algae**

Species	Concentration of heavy metals and arsenic (mg/kg dry weight)							Reference
	Cadmium	Lead	Mercury	Copper	Zinc	Arsenic	Inorganic Arsenic	
<i>Alaria esculenta</i>	0.22 – 7.9	0.2 – 1.9	< 0.005 - <0.071	0.39 - 4	7 - 45	<0.074 - 100	-	187
<i>Fucus vesiculosus</i>	1.7	11	-	12.7	89	13.5	-	162
<i>Himantalia elongata</i>	0.310 – 0.326	0.203 – 0.259	0.008 – 0.016	1.14 – 1.25	48.5 – 48.7	32.9 – 36.7	0.166 – 0.245	71
<i>Hizikia fusiforme</i>	0.988 – 2.50	< 0.008 ^a – 0.531	0.015 – 0.050	1.78 – 7.70	4.72 – 19.5	103 – 147	32.1 – 69.5	71
<i>Laminaria</i> spp.	0.085 – 1.83	< 0.008 ^a – 0.460	0.001 – 0.005	0.91 – 2.50	10.3 – 23.2	51.7 – 68.3	0.052 – 0.443	71
<i>Undaria pinnatifida</i>	0.267 – 4.82	< 0.008 ^a – 1.28	0.010 – 0.057	1.07 – 1.70	8.25 – 26.6	42.1 – 76.9	0.045 – 0.346	71

^a Limit of detection.

spp. = multiple species

Table 22. Heavy metal, arsenic, and iodine impurities in trade name mixtures containing brown algae species

Trade name mixture	Concentration of heavy metals (ppm)							Reference
	Arsenic	Cadmium	Lead	Nickel	Silver	Iodine	Mercury	
<i>Alaria Esculenta</i> Extract (< 5%) in butylene glycol and water	< 5	< 3	< 5	< 2	< 5	< 10	-	188
<i>Alaria Esculenta</i> Extract (< 5%) in butylene glycol and water – dried before extraction	< 5	< 3	< 5	< 2	< 5	< 10	-	189
<i>Alaria Esculenta</i> Extract (< 5%) in Caprylic/Capric Triglycerides	< 2	< 3	< 5	< 2	< 5	< 1	< 1	190
<i>Ascophyllum Nodosum</i> Extract (40.5%), <i>Halopteris Scoparia</i> Extract (13.5%), water	1.683	< 0.010	< 0.010	-	-	-	< 0.010	191
<i>Cystoseira Amentacea</i> / <i>Caespitosa</i> / <i>Brachycarpa</i> Extracts (48%) in water	7.303	< 0.010	< 0.010	-	-	-	< 0.010	108
<i>Cystoseira Tamariscifolia</i> Extract (0.5%) and Caprylic/Capric Triglycerides	-	-	-	-	-	1	-	54
<i>Cystoseira Tamariscifolia</i> Extract (0.5%), water, and glycerin	1.35	-	-	-	-	1.4	-	128
<i>Dictyopteris Polypodioides</i> Extract (0.5%), water, and glycerin	0.809	-	-	-	-	19	-	128
<i>Dictyopteris Polypodioides</i> Extract (0.5%), water, and glycerin	0.602	-	-	-	-	19	-	128
<i>Dictyopteris Polypodioides</i> Extract (0.5%) and caprylic/capric triglyceride	0.051	-	-	-	-	< 9	-	128
<i>Fucus Vesiculosus</i> Extract, water and alcohol	< 10	-	-	-	-	-	-	192
<i>Fucus Vesiculosus</i> Extract and sodium sulfate	< 10	-	-	-	-	-	-	192
<i>Fucus Vesiculosus</i> Extract (< 5%) in caprylic/capric triglyceride	< 2	< 3	< 5	< 2	< 5	< 1	-	193
<i>Fucus Vesiculosus</i> Extract (0.5%), dipropylene glycol, and water	-	-	-	-	-	< 9	-	128

Table 22. Heavy metal, arsenic, and iodine impurities in trade name mixtures containing brown algae species

Trade name mixture	Concentration of heavy metals (ppm)							Reference
	Arsenic	Cadmium	Lead	Nickel	Silver	Iodine	Mercury	
Fucus Serratus Extract (44%) and water	3.691	0.011	< 0.010	-	-	-	< 0.010	194
Fucus Spiralis Extract (1-3%), butylene glycol, water	< 2	< 3	< 5	< 2	< 5	< 10	-	195
Fucus Spiralis Extract (12%), tetraselmis chui extract (8%), and water	0.65	< 0.05	< 0.05	-	-	-	< 0.05	196
Halidrys Siliquosa Extract (48%) in water	0.01	< 0.010	< 0.010	-	-	-	< 0.010	65
Halopteris Scoparia Extract (0.5%), water, and dipropylene glycol	0.73	-	-	-	-	15	-	128
Himanthalia Elongata Extract (0.5%), water, and dipropylene glycol	-	-	-	-	-	< 9	-	54
Himanthalia Elongata Extract (20%), Undaria Pinnatifida Extract (30%), and water	0.510	0.010	-	-	-	-	0.010	64
Himanthalia Elongata Extract (62%), saccharomyces cerevisiae extract (0.1%), Fucus Vesiculosus Extract (1.4%), and water	1.264	< 0.010	0.210	-	-	-	< 0.010	197
Hizikia Fusiforme Extract, water, and butylene glycol	<10	-	-	-	-	-	-	31
Laminaria Digitata Extract (0.5%), water, and sea salt	1.5	-	-	-	-	62	-	54
Laminaria Digitata Extract (0.5%), water, dipropylene glycol	2.37	-	-	-	-	87	-	54
Laminaria Digitata Extract (0.5%) and water	< 10	-	-	-	-	550 ± 150	-	54
Laminaria Digitata Extract (0.5%) and water	19.06	-	-	-	-	192	-	54
Laminaria Digitata Extract (0.5%) and water	2.69	-	-	-	-	41	-	128
Laminaria Digitata Extract (< 5%) in caprylic/capric triglyceride	< 2	< 3	< 5	< 2	< 5	< 300	-	198
Laminaria Digitata Extract (1.5 – 2.5%) in water and propylene glycol	< 5	< 10	< 5	< 2	< 5	< 400	-	199
Laminaria Japonica Extract (7%), Nereocystis Leutkeana Extract (7%), Macrocystis Pyrifera Extract (7%), and pentaerythrityl tetraethylhexanoate	< 2	< 1	<10	-	-	-	-	200
Laminaria Hyperborea Extract (<5%)	< 2	< 3	< 5	< 2	< 5	< 320	-	201
Laminaria Ochroleuca Extract (<5%), caprylic/capric triglyceride, and tocopherols	< 0.025	< 0.025	< 0.025	-	-	-	< 0.025	202
Laminaria Saccharina, water, and propylene glycol	< 2	< 3	< 5	< 2	< 5	< 200	< 1	203
Laminaria Saccharina Extract in water and propylene glycol	< 2	< 3	< 5	< 2	< 5	< 200	< 1	203
Laminaria Saccharina Extract in water and butylene glycol	< 2	< 3	< 5	< 2	< 5	< 200	< 1	204
Lessonia Nigrescens Extract (12%), water, and butylene glycol	2.628	0.050	< 0.010	-	-	-	0.012	205
Macrocystis Pyrifera (1-3%) in water and methylpropanediol	< 5	< 10	< 5	< 2	< 5	< 5	-	40
Pelvetia Canaliculata Extract (44%) and water	2.383	< 0.010	< 0.010	-	-	-	< 0.010	206
Pelvetia Canaliculata Extract (0.5 – 3%) in butylene glycol and water	< 3	< 3	< 5	< 2	< 5	< 10	-	207
Pelvetia Canaliculata Extract (5.5 – 9% dry extract) in propylene glycol and water	< 2	< 3	< 5	< 2	< 5	< 10	-	208
Pelvetia Canaliculata and Laminaria Digitata (5.5 – 9% dry extract) extracted in propylene glycol with panthenol	< 5	< 3	< 5	< 2	< 5	< 100	-	209

Table 23. Frequency (2019) and concentration of use (2015 - 2016) according to duration and exposure of brown algae-derived ingredients^{75-77,216}

Use type	# Uses	Max. Conc. (%)	# Uses	Max. Conc. (%)	# Uses	Max. Conc. (%)	# Uses	Max. Conc. (%)
	Laminaria Hyperborea Extract		Laminaria Japonica Extract		Laminaria Ochroleuca Extract		Laminaria Saccharina Extract	
Total/range	14	0.03	98	0.005-5	54	0.000024-0.63	136	0.00001-0.54
Duration of use								
Leave-on	14	0.03	81	0.0005-5	48	0.00017-0.63	89	0.000092-0.54
Rinse-off	1	NR	17	0.0005-5	6	0.000024-0.017	47	0.00001-0.51
Diluted for (bath) use	NR	NR	NR	0.011-5	NR	NR	NR	NR
Exposure type								
Eye area	NR	NR	4	0.0005-0.007	7	0.0034-0.63	NR	0.000092-0.019
Incidental ingestion	NR	NR	1	NR	1	NR	NR	NR
Incidental Inhalation-Spray	2; 7 ^a ; 3 ^b	NR	14 ^a ; 40 ^b	0.3-5 ^a	16 ^a ; 12 ^b	0.017; 0.017 ^a	42 ^a ; 20 ^b	0.001-0.005
Incidental Inhalation-Powder	3 ^b	0.03 ^c	3; 2 ^a ; 40 ^b	0.0035; 0.0055-5 ^c	3; 12 ^b	0.0005-0.17 ^c	20 ^b	0.0008; 0.000092-0.1 ^c
Dermal Contact	14	0.03	92	0.0005-5	53	0.000024-0.63	124	0.000092-0.54
Deodorant (underarm)	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	0.15 ^c
Hair- Non-Coloring	1	NR	2	0.0005-0.3	NR	0.017	12	0.00001-0.045
Hair- Coloring	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	0.017	NR	NR
Nail	NR	NR	2	NR	NR	NR	NR	0.001
Mucous Membrane	1	NR	6	0.011-5	3	NR	4	0.51
Baby Products	NR	NR	2	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR
	Lessonia Nigrescens Extract		Macrocystis Pyrifera (Kelp)		Macrocystis Pyrifera (Kelp) Extract		Macrocystis Pyrifera (Kelp) Protein	
Total/range	NR	0.032	2	NR	199	0.00005-36.4	3	NR
Duration of use								
Leave-on	NR	NR	1	NR	114	0.0002-36.4	1	NR
Rinse-off	NR	0.032	1	NR	81	0.00005-5	2	NR
Diluted for (bath) use	NR	NR	NR	NR	4	0.0051-1	NR	NR
Exposure type								
Eye area	NR	NR	NR	NR	5	0.007-36.4	NR	NR
Incidental Ingestion	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	0.079	NR	NR
Incidental Inhalation-Spray	NR	NR	1 ^a	NR	10; 40 ^a ; 27 ^b	0.042-0.79; 0.0036-5 ^a ; 0.17 ^b	NR	NR
Incidental Inhalation-Powder	NR	NR	NR	NR	2; 27 ^b	0.0035; 0.001-33.3 ^c ; 0.17 ^b	NR	NR
Dermal Contact	NR	0.032	2	NR	134	0.00005-36.4	3	NR
Deodorant (underarm)	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR
Hair- Non-Coloring	NR	NR	NR	NR	56	0.001-5	NR	NR
Hair- Coloring	NR	NR	NR	NR	4	NR	NR	NR
Nail	NR	NR	NR	NR	5	0.0002-0.0011	NR	NR
Mucous Membrane	NR	NR	1	NR	39	0.0051-5	1	NR
Baby Products	NR	NR	NR	NR	1	NR	NR	NR
	Pelvetia Canaliculata Extract		Sargassum Filipendula Extract		Sargassum Fusiforme Extract		Sargassum Muticum Extract	
Total/range	47	0.00002-0.018	46	0.0001-1.2	17	NR	1	0.01-0.076
Duration of use								
Leave-on	34	0.00002-0.018	14	0.0001-1.2	13	NR	NR	0.076
Rinse-off	13	0.00004-0.0018	32	0.002-0.29	4	NR	1	0.01
Diluted for (bath) use	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR
Exposure type^e								
Eye area	6	0.00002-0.0007	2	NR	NR	NR	NR	0.076
Incidental Ingestion	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR
Incidental Inhalation-Spray	1; 18 ^a ; 8 ^b	0.00004-0.0007; 0.002-0.0035 ^a	3; 5 ^a ; 1 ^b	0.0001 ^a	7 ^a ; 4 ^b	NR	NR	NR
Incidental Inhalation-Powder	8 ^b	0.002-0.018 ^c	1 ^b	0.8 ^c	4 ^b ; 1 ^c	NR	NR	NR
Dermal Contact	19	0.00002-0.018	16	0.002-1.2	17	NR	1	0.076
Deodorant (underarm)	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR
Hair- Non-Coloring	24	0.00004-0.0025	7	0.0001-0.29	NR	NR	NR	NR
Hair- Coloring	1	0.0000-0.0007	23	0.011-0.29	NR	NR	NR	NR
Nail	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR
Mucous Membrane	1	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR
Baby Products	NR	NR	NR	NR	1	NR	NR	NR

Table 23. Frequency (2019) and concentration of use (2015 - 2016) according to duration and exposure of brown algae-derived ingredients^{75-77,216}

Use type	# Uses Max. Conc. (%)		# Uses Max. Conc. (%)		# Uses Max. Conc. (%)		# Uses Max. Conc. (%)	
	Sargassum Vulgare Extract		Sphacelaria Scoparia Extract		Undaria Pinnatifida Extract		Undaria Pinnatifida Powder	
Total/range	NR	0.0075-0.016	8	0.016	90	0.00001-5	NR	0.1
Duration of use								
Leave-on	NR	0.009-0.016	6	0.016	76	0.00001-5	NR	NR
Rinse-off	NR	0.0075	2	NR	14	0.0001-5	NR	0.1
Diluted for (bath) use	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	0.0001	NR	NR
Exposure type								
Eye area	NR	0.011	NR	NR	4	NR	NR	NR
Incidental Ingestion	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR
Incidental Inhalation-Spray	NR	0.009 ^a	1 ^a ; 4 ^c	NR	18 ^a ; 42 ^b	0.002 ^a	NR	NR
Incidental Inhalation-Powder	NR	0.011 ^c	4 ^c	NR	2; 42 ^b ; 3 ^c	0.00001-5; 0.00001-5 ^c	NR	NR
Dermal Contact	NR	0.011-0.016	8	0.016	80	0.00001-5	NR	0.1
Deodorant (underarm)	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR
Hair- Non-Coloring	NR	0.0075-0.009	NR	NR	10	0.002-5	NR	NR
Hair- Coloring	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR
Nail	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR
Mucous Membrane	NR	NR	2	NR	4	0.0001	NR	NR
Baby Products	NR	NR	NR	NR	4	NR	NR	NR

	Nereocystis Luetkeana Extract		Sargassum Fulvellum Extract		Saccharina Longicuris Extract		Halidrys Siliquosa Extract	
	Total/range	6	NR	2	NR	2	2	NR
Duration of use								
Leave-on	6	NR	2	NR	NR	NR	NR	0.29
Rinse-off	0	NR	NR	NR	2	2	NR	0.029
Diluted for (bath) use	0	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR
Exposure type								
Eye area	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	0.29
Incidental Ingestion	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR
Incidental Inhalation-Spray	NR	NR	2 ^b	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR
Incidental Inhalation-Powder	2	NR	2 ^b	NR	NR	NR	NR	0.29 ^c
Dermal Contact	6	NR	2	NR	NR	NR	NR	0.029–0.29
Deodorant (underarm)	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR
Hair- Non-Coloring	NR	NR	NR	NR	2	2	NR	NR
Hair- Coloring	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR
Nail	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR
Mucous Membrane	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR
Baby Products	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR

NR = Not Reported; NS = Not Surveyed; Totals = Rinse-off + Leave-on + Diluted for Bath Product Uses.

Note: Because each ingredient may be used in cosmetics with multiple exposure types, the sum of all exposure type uses may not equal the sum total uses.

^a It is possible these products may be sprays, but it is not specified whether the reported uses are sprays.

^b Not specified whether a powder or a spray, so this information is captured for both categories of incidental inhalation.

^c It is possible these products may be powders, but it is not specified whether the reported uses are powders.

^d Frequency of use and concentration of use were reported under the INCI name Dictyopteris Membranacea Extract (Retired).

^e Not spray.

Table 24. Brown algae-derived ingredients with no reported uses in the VCRP or the Council survey⁷⁵⁻⁷⁷

Ascophyllum Nodosum	Hydrolyzed Ecklonia Cava Extract
Cladosiphon Novae-Caledoniae Extract	Hydrolyzed Fucus Vesiculosus Extract
Cystoseira Amentacea/Caespitosa / Branchycarpa Extract	Hydrolyzed Fucus Vesiculosus Extract
Cystoseira Baccata Extract	Hydrolyzed Fucus Vesiculosus Protein
Cystoseira Balearica Extract	Laminaria Diabolica Extract
Cystoseira Caespitosa Extract	Laminaria Japonica Powder
Cystoseira Compressa Extract	Laminaria Longissima Extract
Cystoseira Compressa Powder	Laminaria Longissima Extract
Cystoseira Tamariscifolia Extract	Lessonia Nigrescens Powder
Dictyota Coriacea Extract	Macrocystis Pyrifera (Kelp) Blade/Pneumatocyst/Stipe Juice Extract
Ecklonia Cava Extract	Macrocystis Pyrifera (Kelp) Juice
Ecklonia Cava Water	Macrocystis Pyrifera (Kelp) Juice
Ecklonia Kurome Extract	Pelvetia Siliquosa Extract
Ecklonia Kurome Powder	Phyllacantha Fibrosa Extract
Ecklonia Maxima Extract	Saccharina Angustata Extract [Laminaria Angustata Extract (Retired)]
Ecklonia Maxima Powder	Saccharina Japonica Extract [Laminaria Ochotensis Extract (Retired)]
Ecklonia/Laminaria Extract	Sargassum Glaucescens Extract
Eisenia Arborea Extract	Sargassum Horneri Extract
Fucus Spiralis Extract	Sargassum Pallidum Extract
Halidrys Siliquosa Extract	Sargassum Siliquastrum Extract
Himanthalia Elongata Powder	Sargassum Thunbergii Extract
Hizikia Fusiforme Extract	Undaria Peterseniana Extract
Hizikia Fusiformis Callus Culture Extract	Undaria Pinnatifida Cell Culture Extract
Hizikia Fusiformis Water	Undaria Pinnatifida Leaf/Stem Extract
Hizikia Fusiformis Water	Undaria Pinnatifida Root Powder

Table 25. GRAS brown algae-derived ingredients

Species	Functional Use in Food	CFR Citation
<i>Hizikia fusiforme</i>	Spices, seasoning, flavoring	21CFR184.1120
<i>Laminaria</i> spp.	Natural substances; solvent-free natural extractives	21CFR582.30; 21CFR582.40
<i>Laminaria claustronia</i>	Spices, seasoning, flavoring; dietary supplement	21CFR184.1120; 21CFR172.365
<i>Laminaria digitata</i>	Spices, seasoning, flavoring; dietary supplement	21CFR184.1120; 21CFR172.365
<i>Laminaria japonica</i>	Spices, seasoning, flavoring	21CFR184.1120
<i>Laminaria longissima</i>	Spices, seasoning, flavoring	21CFR184.1120
<i>Laminaria saccharina</i>	Spices, seasoning, flavoring; dietary supplement	21CFR184.1120; 21CFR172.365
<i>Nereocystis</i> spp.	Natural substances; solvent-free natural extractives	21CFR582.30; 21CFR582.40
<i>Macrocystis pyrifera</i>	Spices, seasoning, flavoring; dietary supplement	21CFR184.1120; 21CFR172.365
<i>Undaria pinnatifida</i>	Spices, seasoning, flavoring	21CFR184.1120

Table 26. Brown algae species used in food products¹⁶

Species	Methods of consumption	Reference
<i>Alaria esculenta</i>	Eaten either fresh or cooked	16
<i>Ascophyllum nodosum</i>	Eaten either fresh or cooked	217
<i>Cladosiphon okamuranus</i>	Eaten fresh and in seaweed salads	16
<i>Ecklonia cava</i>	Used in addition to <i>Hizikia</i> as pigment replacer; typically cooked into stir fries	16
<i>Fucus vesiculosus</i>	Eaten as a vegetable or condiment	87
<i>Fucus serratus</i>	Eaten as a vegetable or condiment	87
<i>Hizikia fusiforme</i>	Steamed to remove phlorotannins, and cooked into stir fries; used as a spice	16
<i>Himanthalia elongata</i>	Eaten dried or pickled	218,219
<i>Laminaria angustata</i> (also known as <i>Saccharina angustata</i>)	Typically cooked in soups; can be powdered and added to sauces and soups; used in tea	16
<i>Laminaria digitata</i>	Eaten dried, fresh, or cooked	217
<i>Laminaria japonica</i>	Typically cooked in soups; can be powdered and added to sauces and soups; used in tea	16
<i>Laminaria longissima</i>	Typically cooked in soups; can be powdered and added to sauces and soups; used in tea	16
<i>Laminaria ochotensis</i>	Typically cooked in soups; can be powdered and added to sauces and soups; used in tea	16
<i>Laminaria ochroleuca</i>	Eaten dried, fresh, or cooked	220
<i>Laminaria saccharina</i>	Eaten dried, fresh, or cooked	217
<i>Macrocystis pyrifera</i>	Used as spices, seasonings	16
<i>Undaria pinnatifida</i>	Eaten raw in dehydrated form; used in instant foods such as noodles and soups; used as spice, seasoning	16

Table 27. Acute oral toxicity studies

Ingredient	Animals	No./Group	Vehicle	Concentration/Dose/Protocol	LD₅₀/Results	Reference
ORAL						
Agarum Cribosum Extract 3%	Sprague-Dawley rats	5/sex	hydroglycolic solution	2000 mg/kg bw; OECD TG 401	No mortality observed.	92
Ascophyllum Nodosum Extract	Sprague-Dawley rats	NR	NR	OECD TG 401	LD ₅₀ > 2000 mg/kg	93
Cystoseira Compressa Extract (methanol, hexane, and chloroform extracts)	Albino mice	2	Not specified	Up to 2000 mg/kg by gavage. Observed for 24 h.	There were no mortalities or clinical signs for any of the extracts.	62
Ecklonia Cava Extract (alcohol extract)	Sprague-Dawley (Crl:DC(DS)) rats	10/sex	Not specified	2000 mg/kg by gavage. Observed for 2 weeks.	There were no mortalities. Clinical signs were soft stools, diarrhea, mucus stools, compound-colored feces, and soiled perineal region from the day of administration until day 2.	9
Ecklonia Cava Extract (enzyme extract)	SD rats	5/sex	Distilled water	0 or 3000 mg/kg by oral gavage. Rats were observed for 14 days.	No abnormal changes in body weights, clinical signs, or mortalities were observed. Necropsy results showed no macroscopic lesions in any organs of treatment group.	94
Ecklonia Cava Extract (enzyme extract)	Beagle dogs	2/sex	Distilled water	3000 mg/kg by oral gavage in two equally divided doses approximately 6 h apart. Dogs were observed for 14 days.	No abnormal changes in body weights, clinical signs, or mortalities were observed. Necropsy results showed no macroscopic lesions in any organs of treatment group.	94
Fucus Vesiculosus Extract (28.8% polyphenols)	Swiss mice	7/sex	1% carboxymethyl-cellulose	1000 - 2000 mg/kg OECD TG 425 Administered by gavage. An Irwin test (determines the general effects of a test substance on the central nervous system and physiological functions) was performed at 1 and 5 h after administration of the extracts to detect motor, respiratory, temperature, circulatory, behavior, or other alterations. Mice were observed for 7 days.	LD ₅₀ : Males = 1000 mg/kg; females = between 1000 and 2000 mg/kg	95
Fucus Vesiculosus Extract (18% polyphenols plus 0.0012% fucoxanthin)	Swiss mice	7/sex	1% carboxymethyl-cellulose	200 - 750 mg/kg OECD TG 425 Administered by gavage. Irwin test was performed at 1 and 5 h after administration of the extracts to detect motor, respiratory, temperature, circulatory, behavior, or other alterations. Mice were observed for 7 days.	LD ₅₀ : Males = 500 mg/kg; females = < 750 mg/kg	95
Fucus Vesiculosus Extract (28.8% polyphenols)	Sprague-Dawley rats	7/sex	1% carboxymethyl-cellulose	1000 - 2000 mg/kg OECD TG 425 Administered by gavage. Irwin test was performed at 1 and 5 h after administration of the extracts to detect motor, respiratory, temperature, circulatory, behavior, or other alterations. Rats were observed for 7 days.	LD ₅₀ : Males and females = between 1000 and 2000 mg/kg	95

Table 27. Acute oral toxicity studies

Ingredient	Animals	No./Group	Vehicle	Concentration/Dose/Protocol	LD ₅₀ /Results	Reference
Fucus Vesiculosus Extract (18% polyphenols plus 0.0012% fucoxanthin)	Sprague-Dawley rats	7/sex	1% carboxymethyl-cellulose	1000 - 2000 mg/kg OECD TG 425 Administered by gavage. Irwin test was performed at 1 and 5 h after administration of the extracts to detect motor, respiratory, temperature, circulatory, behavior, or other alterations. Rats were observed for 7 days.	LD ₅₀ : Males and females = > 2000 mg/kg	95
Laminaria Digitata Extract (≤ 10%), artemisia vulgaris extract (≤ 10%), phenoxyethanol (0.8%), and water	Wistar rats	5/sex	Feed or water	20%; administered via food or water ad-libitum	No significant changes were reported for each of the 10 rats tested. LD ₅₀ : Males and females = > 5 g/kg	96
Sargassum Fulvellum Extract (dichloromethane, ethanol, and water extracts)	BALB/c mice	5	Tween-80 (5%)	5000 mg in 10 mL vehicle by gavage. Observed for 2 weeks.	There were no mortalities. Most of the mice reacted immediately by perpetual gagging, jumping, sleeping, scaling, and writhing for 5–10 min.	55
Sargassum Thunbergii Extract	BALB/c mice	5	Tween-80 (5%)	5000 mg in 10 mL vehicle by gavage. Observed for 2 weeks.	There were no mortalities. Most of the mice reacted immediately by perpetual gagging, jumping, sleeping, scaling, and writhing for 5–10 min.	55

OECD TG = Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development Test Guideline

Table 28. Oral repeated dose studies

Test Article	Extraction Solvent/Method or Composition	Animals (n)	Study Duration	Vehicle	Dose / Concentration	Results	Reference
Short-Term							
Ascophyllum nodosum	Dried	Topigs Hybrid X Piétrain weanling pigs (20)	23 days	Feed	0, 2.5, 5.0, or 10.0 g/kg feed (0.25%, 0.5%, or 1.0%)	There were no adverse effects from treated feed. There were no effects on weight gain, feed consumption. Digestion characteristics were similar to controls (pH, fresh matter weight, and dry matter content), except for pH of part of the intestine was increased in the high-dose group (6.28 vs.5.96).	97
Ascophyllum nodosum	Freeze-dried and powdered	Male Sprague-Dawley rats (6)	4 weeks	Feed	0, 5%, 10%, or 15% in feed	Food intake, weight gain, and serum enzyme (alanine transaminase and aspartate transaminase) levels indicated that seaweed diets were well tolerated.	50
Ecklonia Cava Extract	Alcohol extract	Male ICR mice (10)	4 weeks	None	0, 1.25, 2.5 or 5 mg/d Mice were fed high fat diet (20% fat) or normal diet (5% to 10% fat). After 1 week, mice in high fat diets were administered Ecklonia Cava Extract by gavage while continuing on the high fat diet.	There were no mortalities. There was a dose-dependent lower body weight of ~ 12% - ~ 16% in the mice administered the extract compared to control group. Triglycerides, total cholesterol and LDL cholesterol were decreased in all treated groups. Liver enzymes (GPT and GOT), BUN, and creatinine values in serum were similar to controls. No data on feed consumption provided.	98

Table 28. Oral repeated dose studies

Test Article	Extraction Solvent/Method or Composition	Animals (n)	Study Duration	Vehicle	Dose / Concentration	Results	Reference
Ecklonia Cava Extract	Enzyme extract	SD rats (5/sex)	14 days	Water	0, 1000, 2000, or 5000 mg/kg by gavage	- There were no mortalities. No dose-related clinical abnormalities or body weight changes. - Macroscopic examination did not reveal any treatment-related abnormal lesions in males or females at necropsy; although redness in thymus, red spot in lung, and congestion and red spot in cervical lymph node were sporadically observed without a dose-dependent relationship. - Females in the 2000 and 5000 mg/kg groups had decreases in absolute and relative left ovary weights relative to control group and decreases in absolute brain weights were observed in females in 5000 mg/kg group.	94
Ecklonia Cava Extract	Alcohol extract	Sprague-Dawley (CrI:CD(SD)) rats (5/sex)	4 weeks	None	0, 500, 1000, or 2000 mg/kg/d by gavage.	- Compound-colored stools were observed in all rats in all dosing groups starting from day 1 of dosing. Salivation after dosing was observed sporadically in 1 female in the 1000 mg/kg/d group and in 2 males and 2 females in the 2000 mg/kg/d group on days 5 to 17 of dosing. - In clinical chemical investigations in 2000 mg/kg/d group, increases in ALT, and decreases in total protein, triglycerides and glucose were observed in males. Absolute and relative liver weights and absolute kidney weights were increased in males in 2000 mg/kg/d group. In females, relative heart weights were decreased in 1000 and 2000 mg/kg/d groups. There were no differences between study groups concerning body weight. Histopathologically, atrophy of periportal hepatocytes in livers was detected in male rats in 2000 mg/kg/d group.	9
Ecklonia Cava Extract	Alcohol extract	Beagle dogs (2/sex)	8 days 2-week observation period	Capsule	Day 1, 100 mg/kg; Day 4, 300 mg/kg; and Day 8, 1000 mg/kg	There were no mortalities. Compound-colored stools were observed in all dogs in 300 and 1000 mg/kg groups. Vomiting was observed in 1 male and 1 female dog when treated at 1000 mg/kg.	9
Fucus Vesiculosus Extract (28.8% polyphenols)	Ethanol (30% - 35% aq)	Sprague-Dawley rats (7/sex)	4 weeks	1% CMC	0, 200, or 750 mg/kg/d by gavage	- There were no mortalities. - Males: body and most organ weights were similar to controls. Livers had an increase weight (21%) at necropsy. - Females: body and organ weights were similar to controls.	95
Fucus Vesiculosus Extract (18% polyphenols plus 0.0012% fucoxanthin)	Ethanol (50% - 70% aq.)	Sprague-Dawley rats (7/sex)	4 weeks	1% CMC	0, 200, or 750 mg/kg/d by gavage	- There were no mortalities. - Males: body and most organ weights were similar to controls. Livers had an increase weight (25%) at necropsy. - Females: body and organ weights were similar to controls.	95
Laminaria Japonica Extract	Ethanol extract	Sprague-Dawley rats (6)	6 weeks	Not clear (probably daily gavage)	0, 100, 200, or 400 mg/kg starting after 6 weeks of a 12-week high-fat diet	- There were no mortalities. - Treatment groups had decreased the body weight gain, fat-pad weights, and serum and hepatic lipid levels in high-fat-induced obese rats. Histological analysis showed that treated groups had decreased number of lipid droplets and size of adipocytes compared to untreated high-fat diet group.	51

Table 28. Oral repeated dose studies

Test Article	Extraction Solvent/Method or Composition	Animals (n)	Study Duration	Vehicle	Dose / Concentration	Results	Reference
Subchronic Oral							
Cladosiphon Okamuranus Extract	hydrolyzing in HCl	Wistar Rats (12/group)	3 months	Water	300, 600, 1299, 2400, 4000 mg/kg bw/d by gavage	A dose-dependent increase in clotting time and decrease in alkaline phosphatase (ALP) was noted in high doses. No significant differences compares to control. No treatment-related changes in organ weights reported. No abnormalities is morphology of brain, thymus, lungs, heart, spleen, liver, adrenal glands, kidneys, testes, thyroids, prostate gland, uterus or ovaries.	52
Ecklonia Cava Extract	Alcohol extract	Sprague-Dawley (CrI:CD(SD)) rats (10/sex;5 additional in control and high-dose groups)	13 weeks 4-week recovery period for 5 rats in control and high-dose group	Water	0, 375, 750, or 1500 mg/kg/d	- Compound-colored stools in all dose levels; not considered to be of toxicological significance. -At 750 and 1500 mg/kg/d, BUN was decreased in males, glucose was decreased in females, and neutrophil counts were increased in females, compared to controls. Sporadic salivation occurred in females. - At 1500 mg/kg/d, incidence of salivation in females increased and occurred in male rats. Salivation was mainly observed after gavage, but to some degree also before. It was considered by authors to be a temporary sign caused by the test substance, since it was no longer evident later in the day. Number of rats with salivation increased with study duration. -At 1500 mg/kg/d, males and females had a lower body weight (11.7% and 8.7%, respectively) at end of study compared to controls (not statistically significant). This effect was dose related, appearing to a minor degree also at lower dose levels. Body weight effects were more pronounced in recovery group in both sexes. Feed consumption was not decreased. Blood chemistry analyses showed increases of phosphorus and ALT concentrations and a decrease of triglycerides in males, and a decrease of glucose in females, compared to controls. Prothrombin time was increased in males compared to controls. These changes were not evident after recovery period. There were no compound related findings in histopathological investigations including liver.	9
Ecklonia Cava Extract	Enzyme extract	SD rats (5/sex)	13 weeks	Water	0, 500, 1000, 2000, or 3000 mg/kg by gavage	- There were no mortalities. None of groups had any dose-related clinical abnormalities or body weight changes. - Urinalysis and hematological analysis showed no treatment-related adverse effects. - Serum biochemistry and organ weights showed sporadic changes. However, sporadic changes might not have any relationship with treatment because these changes were very minimal within physiologically acceptable ranges without consistency between male and female rats. - Gross visual and macroscopic changes were not observed in organs of treated rats. Histopathological examination of sampled organs revealed a few spontaneous lesions which might be unrelated to treatment because there was no difference in incidence between control and treatment groups.	94

Table 28. Oral repeated dose studies

Test Article	Extraction Solvent/Method or Composition	Animals (n)	Study Duration	Vehicle	Dose / Concentration	Results	Reference
Chronic Oral							
Laminaria Japonica Powder	Dried and powdered	Male CDF1 mice (6)	Life time	Feed	0, 2%, 5%	Mean lifespans were similar in all groups: 907 ± 135, 746 ± 183, and 851 ± 225 days for 0, 2%, and 5%, respectively.	53
Undaria Pinnatifida Extract	Filtered aqueous extract of powdered stems and thick leaves	Female Sprague-Dawley (SD) rats (12)	32 weeks	Drinking water	1.5 g in 1000 mL water	There were no mortalities. Body weight changes were similar between groups.	99
Undaria Pinnatifida Powder	Dried and ground	Female SD rats (5)	36 weeks	Feed	0, 1.0%, or 5.0%	There were no mortalities. Body weight changes, thyroid weights, and T4 levels were similar between groups.	100

ALP = alkaline phosphatase; ALT = alanine aminotransferase; AMP = adenosine monophosphate; AST = aspartate aminotransferase; BUN = blood urea nitrogen; CMC = carboxymethylcellulose; GOT = glutamic oxaloacetic transaminase; GPT = glutamic pyruvic transaminase; HDL = high-density lipoprotein; IgA = immunoglobulin A; IgG = immunoglobulin G; IgM = immunoglobulin M; LDL = low-density lipoprotein; MCHC = mean corpuscular hemoglobin concentration; T4 = thyroxin

Table 29. Genotoxicity studies

Ingredient/Test Article	Extraction Solvent/Method	Concentration/Vehicle	Procedure	Test System	Results	Reference
In Vitro						
Ascophyllum Nodosum Extract	Not specified	Not specified	Ames assay performed according to OECD TG 471. No other details provided.	Not specified	Non-mutagenic.	93
Ascophyllum Nodosum Extract	Not specified	50, 150, 500, 1500, or 5000 µg/plate; in water	Ames assay, with and without metabolic activation in accordance with OECD TG 471 (bacterial reverse mutation test). Negative control: histidine; positive control: 4-nitroquinoline-N-oxide, 3-methylmethane sulphonate, 2-aminoanthracene, and sodium azide. There was no solvent control.	<i>S. typhimurium</i> (strains TA97, TA98, TA100, TA102, and TA1535)	Not genotoxic in all strains	6
Ascophyllum Nodosum Extract	Not specified	150, 500, 1500, or 5000 µg/mL; in water	Mammalian cell gene mutation test accordance with OECD TG 476 (in vitro mammalian cell gene mutation test) with and without metabolic activation. Positive control without metabolic activation: ethylmethanesulphonate, with metabolic activation: BaP	CHO; K1 sub clone CHO K1	Increased mutant frequencies at 1500 and 5000 µg/mL without metabolic activation; no increase in mutation frequencies at lower concentrations. No increase in mutation frequencies at any concentration with metabolic activation.	6
Ascophyllum Nodosum Extract	Not specified	With metabolic activation: 0.63, 1.25, 2.5, or 5 mg/mL; without metabolic activation: 1.25, 2.5, or 5 mg/mL	Chromosome aberration assay in accordance with OECD TG 487 (in vitro mammalian chromosome aberration test) with and without metabolic activation. Negative control: medium (serum free cell culture medium); positive controls: CPA, MMC, and colchicine	Human lymphocytes	Not genotoxic	6

Table 29. Genotoxicity studies

Ingredient/Test Article	Extraction Solvent/ Method	Concentration/ Vehicle	Procedure	Test System	Results	Reference
Ascophyllum Nodosum Extract	Not specified	Experiment I: With metabolic activation: 1.25, 2.5, or 5 mg/mL; without metabolic activation: 1.25, 2.5, or 5 mg/mL Experiment II: without metabolic activation: 0.63, 1.25, 2.5, or 5 mg/mL Serum free cell culture medium	Chromosome aberration assay in accordance with OECD TG 487 with and without metabolic activation. Negative control: solvent (serum free cell culture medium); Positive control: CPA, MMC, colchicine	Human peripheral lymphocytes	Not genotoxic or cytotoxic	⁶
Ascophyllum Nodosum Extract (4.7%) in water	Not specified	4.7% Ascophyllum Nodosum Extract	An Ames test was performed using a trade name mixture containing 4.7% Ascophyllum nodosum extract in 94.5% water. The procedure was done in accordance to OECD TG 471.	Not specified	Not mutagenic or pro-mutagenic activity	⁷⁰
Cystoseira Compressa Extract	n-Hexane, chloroform, and methanol	1, 2.5, or 5 mg/plate	Ames Assay with and without metabolic activation. Negative control: DMSO. Positive controls: BaP, 2-nitrofluorene, and sodium azide.	<i>S. typhimurium</i> (strains TA 98 and TA 100)	Not mutagenic	⁶²
Cystoseira Compressa Extract (1-3%) in amilopectine glycerine water	Water and glycerine	3.25 – 51.95 mg/plate	Ames assay with and without metabolic activation	<i>S. typhimurium</i> (strains TA 1535, TA 1537, TA 98, TA 100, and TA 102)	Not mutagenic	¹⁰¹
Ecklonia Cava Extract	Enzymatic extraction	911 - 3500 µg/plate; distilled water	Ames assay, with and without metabolic activation. OECD TG 471	<i>S. typhimurium</i> (strains TA 98, TA 100, TA 1535, and TA 1537) and <i>E. coli</i> (WP2uvrA)	Not genotoxic	⁹⁴
Ecklonia Cava Extract	Alcohol	Up to 5000 µg/plate; vehicle not specified	Ames assay, with and without metabolic activation	<i>S. typhimurium</i> (strains TA 98, TA 100, TA 1535, and TA 1537) and <i>E. coli</i> (WP2uvrA(pKM101))	Not genotoxic or cytotoxic	⁹
Ecklonia Cava Extract	Alcohol	Up to 290 µg/mL	Chromosome aberration test, with and without metabolic activation	CHL cells	Not genotoxic	⁹
Ecklonia Cava Extract	Enzymatic extraction	87.5 – 350 µg/plate; distilled water	Chromosome aberration test, with and without metabolic activation. OECD TG 473	CHL cells	Not genotoxic	⁹⁴
Fucus Spiralis Extract (12%), tetraselmis chui extract (8%), water (80%)	Not specified	0.06 – 5 µL/plate	Ames assay, OECD TG 471; with and without metabolic activation	Not specified.	Non-mutagenic; Non-promutagenic	¹⁰²
Fucus Vesiculosus Extract	Aqueous	0, 0.25, 0.5, or 1 mg/mL; cell medium	Chromosome aberration assay OECD TG 487	Human peripheral lymphocytes	Frequency of chromosome aberrations, mitotic index and extent of DNA damage in cells treated with extract were similar to controls at all concentrations.	¹⁰³
Fucus Vesiculosus Extract	Aqueous	0, 0.25, 0.5, or 1 mg/mL; cell medium	Comet assay	Human peripheral lymphocytes	Extent of DNA damage in cells treated with extract was similar to controls at all concentrations.	¹⁰³

Table 29. Genotoxicity studies

Ingredient/Test Article	Extraction Solvent/ Method	Concentration/ Vehicle	Procedure	Test System	Results	Reference
Halidrys Siliquosa Extract (48%) in water (52%)	Water	0.06 µL – 5 µL/plate	Ames assay; OECD TG 471; with and without metabolic activation	<i>S. typhimurium</i> (strains TA 98, TA 100, TA 102, TA 1535)	Non-mutagenic; Non-promutagenic	105
<i>Laminaria digitata</i>	Not specified	Not specified	Ames assay, with and without metabolic activation	<i>S. typhimurium</i>	No evidence of mutagenicity	104
Laminaria Saccharina Extract	NR	50, 150, 500, 1500 and 5000 µg/plate; sea water and methylpropandiol	Ames test with and without metabolic activation	<i>S. typhimurium</i> (TA 1535, TA 1537, TA 102, TA98, and TA 100)	Non-mutagenic	105
Macrocystis Pyrifera (Kelp) Extract	Water	1 mL extract in 10 mL 0.9% sodium chloride (concentration of extract was approximately 4%)	Ames test with and without metabolic activation	<i>S. typhimurium</i> (TA 98, TA 100, TA 1535, TA 1537, TA1538)	Non-mutagenic	106
Trade name mixture containing 24% Undaria Pinnatifida Cell Culture Extract	Aqueous	1.5, 5, 15, 50, 150, 500, 1500, and 5000 µg/plate	Bacterial reverse mutation assay performed with and without metabolic activation; OECD TG 471	<i>S. typhimurium</i> (strains TA 98, TA 100, TA 1537, TA 1535) and tryptophan-dependent <i>E. coli</i> (strain WPRuvrA)	Non-mutagenic	107
Cystoseira Amentacea/ Caespitosa/ Brachycarpa Extract (48%), Water (52%)	Water	0.01, 0.1, 1, and 10%	A chemiluminescent 3D Assay was performed by using plasmid DNA adsorbed on sensitized microplates as the substrate	NR	No direct genotoxicity.	108
In Vivo						
Ecklonia Cava Extract	Alcohol	0 or 2000 mg/kg	Micronucleus assay. Test substance administered via oral gavage. Bone marrow (2,000 erythrocytes) was checked for frequency of micronuclei, after 24, 48, and 72 h.	Male Crlj:CD1(ICR) mice (n = 3)	There was no increase in frequency of micronuclei in any of the time points.	9
Ecklonia Cava Extract	Alcohol	0, 500, 1000, or 2000 mg/kg	Micronucleus assay. Test substance administered via oral gavage. Bone marrow (2,000 erythrocytes) was checked for the frequency of micronuclei, after 24 h.	Male Crlj:CD1(ICR) mice (n = 5)	There was no increase in frequency of micronuclei polychromatic erythrocytes (PCE)/(PCE + normochromatic erythrocytes (NCE)) ratio was not significantly different between treatment groups and control groups. No evidence of genotoxicity.	9
Ecklonia Cava Extract	Enzymatic extraction	1000, 2000, or 3000 mg/kg; distilled water	Mouse micronucleus assay. The number of mice used in the study was not provided. Administered by gavage. Saline and MMC were the controls. OECD TG 474	Male ICR mice	There were no mortalities or abnormal clinical signs in any group. There were no increases in structural or numerical chromosomal aberrations at any dose compared to the negative control.	94

BaP = benzo(a)pyrene; CHL = Chinese hamster lung; CHO = Chinese hamster ovary; CPA = cyclophosphamide; HCl = hydrochloric acid; MMC = mitomycin C; MNPCE = micronucleated polychromatic erythrocyte; NCE = normochromatic erythrocyte; NR = Not Reported; PBS = phosphate-buffered saline; PCE = polychromatic erythrocytes

Table 30. Tumor promotion studies

Test Article	Extraction/solvent/ method	Dose/Exposure Route	Species (n)	Tumor Type	Carcinogenicity Model	Results	Reference
Dermal							
Undaria Pinnatifida Extract	Dichloromethane extract	1 mg	Female ICR mice (n not specified)	Skin	- Initiation: a single dermal dose of DMBA (50 µg) - 1 week later, mice were dermally treated twice per week with TPA (1 µg) or Undaria Pinnatifida Extract (1 mg) 1 h prior to treatment with TPA for 15 weeks	TPA: tumors > 1 mm were observed after week 8; average number of tumors was 3.7. Undaria Pinnatifida Extract and TPA: mice did not show 1-mm tumors until week 14 (< 5%); average number of tumors was 0.2.	109
Oral							
Hizikia Fusiforme Extract	95% Ethanol aq.	0, 2%, or 6% in feed	Male F344 rats (10, control, 8)	Colorectal	- Group 1 – standard diet - Group 2 – injected with AOM (15 mg/1 mL/kg once a week for 2 weeks) and standard diet - Group 3 – Injected with AOM and diet with 2% Hizikia Fusiforme Extract - Group 4 – Injected with AOM and diet with 6% Hizikia Fusiforme Extract - After 8 weeks, the rats were killed and necropsied.	- Body weights were similar among groups at 11 weeks. - No tumors were found in the negative control group and 58 tumors were found in the positive control group. Treatment groups had reduced number of tumors (21 each). - Immuno-histochemistry analysis of PCNA expression, a marker of tumor cell proliferation and apoptosis, was lower in treatment groups than in treated control group.	110
Saccharina Angustata Extract (inference from <i>Saccharina angustata</i> powder)	Dried and milled	0 or 5% in feed	Female Sprague-Dawley rats (54)	Mammary	- After 50 days on respective diets, 4 rats in each group were killed and examined for abnormalities. None were found. - At 55 days treatment groups were administered DMBA by gavage after fasting. - Rats were palpated weekly for tumors. - The rats were killed at 181 - 188 days after DMBA administration and necropsied.	- Weight gains were similar among groups. - First tumors in the control group appeared at 11.0 weeks and 19.8 in the treatment group. - 41 of 54 rats (76%) in control group and 34 of 54 rats (63%) in the treatment group had 1 or more adenocarcinomas at necropsy. - During treatment, 13 rats (8 control and 5 experimental) were euthanized between 74 and 170 days post- DMBA. 10 of these rats had developed large (~ 4 cm in diameter) mammary tumors, 2 developed malignant lymphomas, and 1 developed a large necrotic ear gland tumor (Zymbal's gland carcinoma). There were no other deaths. - 12 tumor-free rats (6 from each group) were found to have small nonpalpable mammary masses; 11 of these were found to be adenocarcinomas and 1 to be an adenoma. 93% of all tumors found in the mammary gland region at necropsy were adenocarcinomas; 5 tumors, which were mostly fibroadenoma but which had focal proliferations of malignant epithelial cells. Other tumors consisted of 7 fibroadenomas, 5 adenomas, 3 epidermal inclusion cysts, and 1 adenocarcinoma of sebaceous glands.	111

Table 30. Tumor promotion studies

Test Article	Extraction/solvent/ method	Dose/Exposure Route	Species (n)	Tumor Type	Carcinogenicity Model	Results	Reference
Sargassum Pallidum Extract	Aqueous. Boiled under reflux and filtered.	400, 600 or 800 mg/kg/d	Male Wistar rats (10)	Gastric	- Group 1 – distilled water - Group 2 – 800 mg/kg/d Sargassum Pallidum Extract - Group 3 - 6 – MNNG (25 mg/mL) in drinking for 25 weeks; then 0, 400, 600, or 800 mg/kg Sargassum Pallidum Extract for 8 weeks - All rats were killed at 33 weeks, blood analyzed, and stomachs examined.	- There were no mortalities. - Compared to group 1 (control), Sargassum Pallidum Extract increased serum IL-2, IL-4, and IL-10 levels in group 2; serum IL-2, IL-4, and IL-10 levels in group 3 were decreased. - Compared to group 1, Sargassum Pallidum Extract decreased serum IL-6, IL-1 β , and TNF- α levels in group 2; serum IL-6, IL-1 β , and TNF- α levels in group 3 were increased. - Compared with group 3, Sargassum Pallidum Extract dose-dependently decreased serum IL-6, IL-1 β , and TNF- α levels in groups 4, 5, and 6. - Concentration of serum and gastric mucosa MDA decreased in a dose-dependent manner in groups 4, 5, and 6. - Concentration of serum and gastric mucosa GSH and antioxidant enzyme activities increased in a dose- dependent manner in groups 4, 5, and 6. - Sargassum Pallidum Extract could decrease inflammatory response and improve immunity function partly through stimulating inflammatory cytokines (IL-2, IL-4, IL-10) production and inhibiting pro-inflammatory cytokines production.	112
Undaria Pinnatifida Powder	Not specified	0, 1.0% or 5.0% in feed	Female Sprague- Dawley (SD) rats (11)	Mammary	- Initiation: a single dose of DMBA (20 mg) by gastric intubation - Once tumors reached 1 cm, rats were divided between 3 treatment groups for 8 weeks - Rats were then killed and all mammary tumors were histologically examined and thyroid glands, ovaries, and adrenal glands were weighed. Blood samples collected for measurement of serum total iodine concentration and serum T4 levels.	No differences in body weight gains between groups. Tumors in control group increased by more than 450%; tumor growth was suppressed in the 1% group and there was almost no change in tumor size in the 5% group. Mean combined weight of all mammary tumors of each rat in treatment groups was lower than that in the control group (~7 vs 20 g) at end of experiment. Weights of thyroid glands, ovaries, and adrenal glands did not differ among groups. Concentration of serum iodine was greater in treatment groups compared to controls. Serum iodine concentration had a positive relationship with concentration of Undaria Pinnatifida Powder in diet. Serum T4 levels showed no differences among groups. Test substance did not promote mammary tumors and suppressed tumor growth after a single dose of DMBA.	100
Undaria Pinnatifida Extract	Filtered aqueous extract of powdered stems and thick leaves	1.5 g in 1000 mL water	Female Sprague- Dawley (SD) rats (12)	Mammary	- Initiation: a single dose of DMBA (20 mg) by gastric intubation - 1 week later, treatment began for 32 weeks - Mammary tumors were removed and measured	- Body weight gains were similar in both groups - Incidence of tumors at end of experiment was 22% vs 100% (controls) - The number of tumors was an average of < 1 vs. ~ 7 (controls) - Total tumor diameters was < 250 vs > 5000 mm - Histologically, mammary tumors were cystic adenocarcinoma, and tumors in treatment group had a decreased density of epithelial cells and fibrosis.	99

AOM = azoxymethane; DMBA = 7,12-dimethylbenz(a)anthracene; GSH = glutathione; MDA = malondialdehyde; MNNG = *N*-methyl-*N'*-nitro-*N*-nitrosoguanidine; PCNA = proliferating cell nuclear antigen; T4 = thyroxin; TPA = 12-*O*-tetradecanoylphorbol-13-acetate

Table 31. Dermal irritation and sensitization

Ingredient	Test Substance	Concentration/Dose of the test substance	Test Population	Procedure	Results	Reference
Irritation						
IN VITRO						
Laminaria Japonica, Nereocystis Leutkeana, and Macrocyctis Pyrifera Extract	Trade name mixture containing Laminaria Japonica (7%), Nereocystis Leutkeana (7%), Macrocyctis Pyrifera Extract (7%), and pentaerythrityl tetraethylhexanoate (79%)	100%; 30 µL (liquid) or 25 mg (solid)	3	Reconstructed human epidermal model; 3 tissues treated with test substance and incubated for 60 minutes	Non-irritating	117
Sargassum Filipendula Extract	Trade name mixture containing Sargassum Filipendula Extract (1.3%), water (81.78%), Sorbitol (14%), hypnea musciformis Extract (1.4%), gellidiela acerosa Extract (1.3%), methylparaben (0.2%), propylparaben (0.025%)	100%	3	30 µL (liquid) or 25 mg (solid) of the test substance was applied to 3 tissue inserts and incubated for 60 minutes; inserts were then washed, transferred to fresh media	Non-irritating	118
Undaria Pinnatifida Cell Culture Extract	Trade name mixture containing Undaria Pinnatifida Cell Culture Extract (24%) with water as solvent	30 µL (liquid); 25 mg (solid)	3 per test concentration	The test substance, either liquid or solid, was applied to reconstructed human epidermis and incubated for 60 minutes. These tissue inserts were then washed and cell viability was measured.	Non-irritating	116
Undaria Pinnatifida Extract	Trade name mixture containing Undaria Pinnatifida Extract (0.5-2%) in caprylic/capric triglycerides	100%; 10 µL	3	OECD TG 439; 3 replicates of human skin cell models were treated with the test substance for approximately 15 minutes; time of recovery was 42 hours ± 1 hour	Non-irritating	221
ANIMAL						
Ascophyllum Nodosum Extract	Ascophyllum Nodosum extract	0.5 mL (liquid); 0.5 g (solid)	NR	Dermal irritation assay performed according to OECD TG 404; application for 4 hours	Non-irritating	93
Ascophyllum Nodosum Extract	<i>Ascophyllum nodosum</i> extract	0.5 g; concentration not stated	3 male rabbits	A dermal irritation assay was performed according to OECD TG 404 guidelines. The test substance was administered in three patches on areas of 12-20 cm ² to the shaved backs of the rabbits under semi-occlusion for 3 min (patch 1), 1 h (patch 2), and 4 h (patch 3). There were no signs of irritation after the removal of patch 1 from one rabbit; patch 2 was then applied to the same rabbit. There were no signs of irritation after patch 2 was removed; patch 3 was then applied to all three rabbits. The test site was examined at 1, 24, 48, and 72 hours after removal of the last patch.	Non-irritating	6
Laminaria Digitata Extract	Trade name mixture containing Laminaria Digitata Extract (≤ 10%), artemisia vulgaris extract (≤ 10%), phenoxyethanol (0.8%), and water	20%; 0.5 mL	6 New Zealand White rabbits	The test material was applied to an area of 6 cm ² , and covered with an occlusive patch for 24 hours. Animals were examined 24 and 72 hours after administration of test material.	Non-irritating	96
Laminaria Digitata Extract	Trade name mixture containing Laminaria Digitata Extract, water, and dipropylene glycol	0.5 g; concentration not stated	Rabbits (# not stated)	Dermal irritation assay; details not available	Non-irritating	54
Laminaria Digitata Extract	Trade name mixture containing Laminaria Digitata Extract, water, and sea salt	0.5 g; concentration not stated	Rabbits (# not stated)	Dermal irritation assay; details not available	Non-irritating	54

Table 31. Dermal irritation and sensitization

Ingredient	Test Substance	Concentration/Dose of the test substance	Test Population	Procedure	Results	Reference
HUMAN						
Alaria Esculenta Extract	Trade name mixture containing Alaria Esculenta Extract (<5%) and in caprylic/capric triglycerides	100%; 20 µL	10	24-hour patch test; occlusive patch; over a surface of 50 mm ²	Non-irritating	222
Ascophyllum Nodosum Extract	Trade name mixture containing 4.7% Ascophyllum Nodosum Extract in 94.5% water	NR	NR	A cutaneous irritation test was performed according to OECD TG 439. No additional details were provided.	Non-irritating	70
Ascophyllum Nodosum Extract	Trade name mixture containing 0.5 – 10% Ascophyllum Nodosum Extract in water	100%	10	24-hour patch test; occlusive patch	Non-irritating	128
Ascophyllum Nodosum Extract and Halopteris Scoparia Extract	Ascophyllum Nodosum Extract (40.5%), Halopteris Scoparia Extract (13.5%), and water	100%; 0.02 mL	11	48-hour patch test; occlusive patch	Non-irritating	223
Cystoseira Amentacea/Caespitosa/Brachycarpa Extract	52% water; 48% Cystoseira Amentacea/Caespitosa/Brachycarpa Extract	NR	11	0.02 mL of test substance applied to back under an occlusive patch for 48 hours	Non-irritating	108
Cystoseira Baccata Extract	Cystoseira Baccata Extract in water (0.5 %)	100%	10	24-hour patch test; occlusive dressing	Non-irritating	54
Cystoseira Baccata Extract	Cystoseira Baccata Extract in water (0.5 %)	100%	50	24-hour patch test; occlusive dressing	Non-irritating	54
Cystoseira Tamariscifolia Extract	Trade name mixture containing Cystoseira Tamariscifolia Extract (0.5 %) and caprylic/capric triglycerides	100%	10	24-hour patch test; occlusive patch	Non-irritating	54
Cystoseira Tamariscifolia Extract	Cystoseira Tamariscifolia Extract (0.5 – 10%), glycerin, and water	20%	11	48-hour patch test; occlusive patch	Non-irritating	128
Dictyopteris Polypodioides Extract	Dictyopteris Polypodioides Extract (0.5 – 10%), water, and glycerin	100%	10	48-hour patch test; occlusive patch	Non-irritating	128
Dictyopteris Polypodioides Extract	Dictyopteris Polypodioides Extract (0.5 – 10%) and water	100%	10	48-hour patch test; occlusive patch	Non-irritating	128
Dictyopteris Polypodioides Extract	Dictyopteris Polypodioides Extract (0.5 – 10%) and caprylic/capric triglyceride	100%	10	48-hour patch test; occlusive patch	Non-irritating	128
Fucus Serratus Extract	Fucus Serratus Extract (44%) and water (56%)	5%; 0.02 mL	10	48-hour patch test; occlusive dressing	Non-irritating	224
Fucus Spiralis Extract	Trade name mixture consisting of Fucus Spiralis Extract (1 - 3%) in butylene glycol and water	100%; 20 µL	12	24-hour patch test; occlusive patch; application over an area of 50 mm ²	Non-irritating	225
Fucus Spiralis Extract	Trade name mixture consisting of Fucus Spiralis Extract (< 5%) in caprylic/capric triglycerides	100%; 20 µL	10	Test substance applied to an area of 50 mm ² under an occlusive patch for 30 minutes and 24 hours	Slightly irritating at the 30 minute reading and non-irritating at the 24 hour reading	119
Fucus Spiralis Extract	Fucus Spiralis Extract (12%), tetraselmis chui extract (8%), water (80%)	10%; 0.02 mL	14	48-hour patch test; occlusive dressing	Non-irritating	226

Table 31. Dermal irritation and sensitization

Ingredient	Test Substance	Concentration/Dose of the test substance	Test Population	Procedure	Results	Reference
Fucus Vesiculosus Extract	Fucus Vesiculosus Extract (0.5 – 10%), water, and dipropylene glycol	100%	10	24-hour patch test; occlusive dressing	Non-irritating	128
Fucus Vesiculosus Extract	Trade name mixture consisting of Fucus Vesiculosus Extract (5%) and caprylic/capric triglycerides (95%)	100%; 0.02 mL	10	24-hour patch test; occlusive dressing; application over an area of 50 mm ²	Non-irritating	119
Halidrys Siliquosa Extract	Halidrys Siliquosa Extract (52%) in water (48%)	5%; 0.02 mL	13	Test substance was diluted to 5% and applied to the back under an occlusive patch for 48 hours	Non-irritating	65
Halopteris Scoparia Extract	Halopteris Scoparia Extract (0.5 – 10%), water, and dipropylene glycol	100%	11	24-hour patch test; occlusive patch	Non-irritating	128
Himanthalia Elongata Extract	Trade name mixture containing Himanthalia Elongata Extract (0.5 %), water, and dipropylene glycol	100%	10	24-hour patch test; occlusive patch	Non-irritating	54
Himanthalia Elongata Extract and Undaria Pinnatifida Extract	Himanthalia Elongata Extract (20%), Undaria Pinnatifida Extract (37%), and water (43%)	NR	10	Test substance (0.02 mL) applied to the back under an occlusive patch for 48 hours	Very Slightly Irritating (average irritant score of 0.10)	64
Himanthalia Elongata Extract, Fucus Vesiculosus Extract, saccharomyces cerevisiae extract	Himanthalia Elongata Extract (62%), Fucus Vesiculosus Extract (1.4%), saccharomyces cerevisiae extract (0.1%), and water (36.5%)	10%; 160 µL	10 females	Test substance was applied to the back under a semi-occlusive patch for 48 h ± 4 h.	Non-irritating	227
Laminaria Digitata Extract	Laminaria Digitata Extract and water	0.5 %	10	24-hour patch test; occlusive patch	Non-irritating	54
Laminaria Digitata Extract	Trade name mixture containing Laminaria Digitata Extract (<5%) in caprylic/capric triglycerides	100%; 20 µL	12	24-hour patch test; test substance applied to an area of 50 mm ² ; occlusive patch	Non-irritating	228
Laminaria Digitata Extract	Laminaria Digitata Extract (1.5-2.5%) in water and propylene glycol	100%; 20 µL	12	Test substance applied under an occlusive patch for 30 minutes or 24 hours over an area of 50 mm ²	Moderately irritating at the 30 minute reading; Slightly irritating at the 24 hour reading	120
Laminaria Hyperborea Extract	Trade name mixture containing Laminaria Hyperborea Extract (1-3%) in water	100%; 20 µL	10	24-hour patch test; occlusive patch	Non-irritating	229
Laminaria Japonica Extract	Skin cream containing a 50/50 aqueous propylene glycol extract of Laminaria japonica	10%; 20 mg	25	Patches were applied to the forearms of subjects using Finn chambers for up to 48 h and scored for irritation 6 h after patch removal.	Non-irritating	56
Laminaria Ochroleuca Extract	Trade name mixture consisting of Laminaria Ochroleuca Extract (<5%) in caprylic/capric triglycerides	2%; 20 µL	11	Single 24 hour application over an area of 50 mm ² ; occlusive patch	Non-irritating	230
Laminaria Ochroleuca Extract	Cosmetic product containing Laminaria Ochroleuca Extract (5%), caprylic/capric triglyceride (94.75%), and tocopherols (0.25%)	10%; 0.02 mL	10	48-hour occlusive single patch test	Non-irritating	231

Table 31. Dermal irritation and sensitization

Ingredient	Test Substance	Concentration/Dose of the test substance	Test Population	Procedure	Results	Reference
Lessonia Nigrescens Extract	Lessonia Nigrescens Extract (12%), water (44%), butylene glycol (44%)	5%; 0.02 mL	10	48-hour occlusive single patch test	Non-irritating	²⁵²
Laminaria Saccharina Extract	Trade name mixture containing Laminaria Saccharina Extract (1 -3%) in water and propylene glycol	8, 16, or 100%; 20 µL	10	Six occlusive patches (drenched with test substance) per concentration were applied to the arms over a 50 mm ² surface for 24 and 48 hours	100% dose was slightly irritating; minimal erythema in 5/10 subjects; 16% dose was non-irritating; 8% dose was non-irritating	¹²¹
Macrocystis Pyrifera (Kelp) Extract	Macrocystis Pyrifera (Kelp) Extract (water extract)	4%	10	48-hour occlusive single patch test	Non-irritating	¹⁰⁶
Pelvetia Canaliculata Extract	Trade name mixture containing Pelvetia Canaliculata Extract (1 -3%) in butylene glycol and water	100%; 20 µL	12	Test substance was applied to skin under occlusive patches over a 50 mm ² surface for 30 minutes and 24 hours	Non-irritating at the 30 minute reading; Slightly irritating at the 24 hour reading	²³³
Pelvetia Canaliculata Extract	Trade name mixture containing Pelvetia Canaliculata Extract (1 -3%) in propylene glycol and water	100: 20 µL	12	Test substance was applied to skin under occlusive patches over a 50 mm ² surface for 30 minutes and 24 hours	Moderately irritating at the 30 minute reading; slightly irritating at the 24 hour reading	¹²²
Pelvetia Canaliculata Extract	Trade name mixture containing Pelvetia Canaliculata Extract (0.5 - 3%) in water	100%; 20 µL	11	24-hour patch test; occlusive patch	Non-irritating	¹³⁹
Pelvetia Canaliculata Extract	Pelvetia Canaliculata Extract (44%) and water (56%)	100%; 0.02 mL	11	48-hour patch test; occlusive patch	Non-irritating	²³⁴
Pelvetia Canaliculata Extract and Laminaria Digitata Extract	Trade name mixture containing Pelvetia Canaliculata Extract and Laminaria Digitata Extract extracted in propylene glycol with panthenol (the amount of dry extract of both extracts combined is estimated to be 5.5-9.0%)	5, 10, and 100%; 20 µL	10	Test substance was applied to skin under occlusive patches over a 50 mm ² surface for 24 and 48 hours	Mild irritation at the 100% concentration; Minimal irritation at the 10% concentration; No irritation at the 5% concentration	¹²⁴
Phyllacantha Fibrosa Extract	Phyllacantha Fibrosa Extract (0.5 – 10%) in water	100%	10	24-hour patch test; occlusive patch	Non-irritating	¹²⁸
Sargassum Glaucescens Extract	Trade name mixture containing 20% Sargassum Glaucescens Extract, 79% water, and 1% phenoxyethanol	10%	10	Test substance was applied under an occlusive patch for 48 hours	Non-irritating	¹⁷¹
Sargassum Muticum Extract	Sargassum Muticum Extract (46%) and water (54%)	100%; 0.02 mL	11	Test substance was applied under an occlusive patch for 48 hours	Non-irritating	²³⁵
Sphacelaria Scoparia Extract	Sphacelaria Scoparia Extract (0.5 %), water, and dipropylene glycol	100%; 15 mL	11	24-hour patch test; occlusive dressing	Non-irritating	⁵⁴
Undaria Pinnatifida Extract	Trade name mixture containing Undaria Pinnatifida Extract (< 5%) in water and propylene glycol	100%; 20 µL	12	Test substance applied to the skin over an area of 50 mm ² for either 30 minutes or 24 hours; occlusive patch	Moderately irritating after 30 minutes; Mildly irritating after 24 hours	¹²³

Table 31. Dermal irritation and sensitization

Ingredient	Test Substance	Concentration/Dose of the test substance	Test Population	Procedure	Results	Reference
Undaria Pinnatifida Extract	Trade name mixture containing Undaria Pinnatifida Extract (0.5%) in water and dipropylene glycol	NR	10	24-hour patch test; occlusive dressing	Non-irritating	⁵⁴
Undaria Pinnatifida Extract	Undaria Pinnatifida Extract (0.5 – 10%) and caprylic/capric triglyceride	100%	10	24-hour patch test; occlusive dressing	Non-irritating	¹²⁸
Sensitization						
IN VITRO						
Sargassum Filipendula Extract	Trade name mixture containing Sargassum Filipendula Extract (1.3%), water (81.78%), sorbitol (14%), hypnea musciformis extract (1.4%), gellidiela acerosa extract (1.3%), methylparaben (0.2%), propylparaben (0.025%)	0.98-2000 µM	2 per test concentration	ARE-Nrf2 Luciferase Test performed according to OECD TG 442D; immortalized adherent human keratinocyte cell line; 12 test concentrations ranging from 0.98 to 2000 µM were used	Non-sensitizing	²³⁶
Undaria Pinnatifida Cell Culture Extract	Trade name mixture containing Undaria Pinnatifida Cell Culture Extract (24%) with water as solvent	0.98 – 2000 µM	3 per test concentration	ARE-Nrf2 Luciferase Test performed according to OECD TG 442D; immortalized adherent human keratinocyte cell line; 12 test concentrations ranging from 0.98 to 2000 µM were used	Non-sensitizing	¹²⁵
Undaria Pinnatifida Cell Culture Extract	Undaria Pinnatifida Cell Culture Extract (24%) with water as solvent in acetonitrile	5 mM or 25 mM	3 per test concentration	Direct Peptide Reactivity Assay (DPRA) performed according to OECD TG 442C; 1:10 ratio of Cysteine Peptide (0.5 mM) and test chemical (5 mM) and 1:50 ratio of Lysine peptide (0.5 mM) and test chemical (25 mM)	Non-sensitizing	¹²⁶
ANIMAL						
Agarum Cribosum Extract	Agarum Cribosum Extract (3%) in a hydroglycolic solution	NR	18 male guinea pigs	Magnusson and Kligman (guinea pig maximization test); OECD TG 406	Non-sensitizing	⁹²
Ascophyllum Nodosum Extract	Ascophyllum Nodosum Extract	0.1 to 400 µL of 25% to 75% water solutions	20 test and 10 control guinea pigs	Magnusson and Kligman (guinea pig maximization test); OECD TG 406	Non-sensitizing	⁹³
Cystoseira Amentacea/ Caespitosa/Brachycarpa Extract	Cream containing 0.0023% Cystoseira Amentacea/ Caespitosa/Brachycarpa Extract	100%	25	Maximization study. Product was applied under a semi-occlusive patch. No other details regarding this study were provided.	Non-sensitizing	¹²⁷

Table 31. Dermal irritation and sensitization

Ingredient	Test Substance	Concentration/Dose of the test substance	Test Population	Procedure	Results	Reference
HUMAN						
Alaria Esculenta Extract	Trade name mixture consisting of Alaria Esculenta Extract (<5%) in caprylic/capric triglycerides – dried before extraction	100%; 25 µL	50	The sensitizing potential of the test substance was studied using a HRIPT. The test material was applied to the upper back under a patch. Occlusive conditions. During the induction phase, patches are applied 3 times per week for 3 weeks, for a total of 9 applications. If the test substance caused a moderate reaction (2-level), the application is moved to an adjacent area. If 3-level or 4-level reactions were noted, applications are discontinued. Two weeks after the final induction application, a challenge patch is applied to a previously untested site adjacent to the original patch site. Patches were removed and sites were scored 24 and 72 hours after application.	Non-irritating; Non-sensitizing	129
Alaria Esculenta Extract	Night cream containing 0.05% Alaria Esculenta Extract	0.2 g	105	A HRIPT was performed. Semi-occlusive conditions. The test material was applied to the 1 in ² absorbent pad portion of a clear adhesive dressing.	Non-sensitizing	237
Alaria Esculenta Extract	Trade name mixture consisting of Alaria Esculenta Extract (0.5-2.5%) in butylene glycol and water	100%; 25 µL	50	The test substance was applied (under an occlusive patch) 3 times a week during the induction phase and once a week during challenge phase. The induction phase lasts for 3 weeks, followed by a latent phase which lasts for 2 weeks.	Non-irritating; Non-sensitizing	130
Ascophyllum Nodosum Extract	Ascophyllum Nodosum Extract (0.5 – 10%)	100%; 25 µL	50	A HRIPT was performed. Occlusive conditions.	Non-irritating; Non-sensitizing	128,238
Cystoseira Baccata Extract	Cystoseira Baccata Extract (0.5 – 10%) in water	100%; 25 mL	50	A HRIPT was performed. Occlusive conditions.	Non-irritating; Non-sensitizing	54,238
Cystoseira Compressa Extract	Trade name mixture consisting of Cystoseira Compressa Extract (1-3%) in amilopectin glycerine water	25%	54	A HRIPT was performed. Occlusive conditions.	Non-irritating; Non-sensitizing	146
Cystoseira Tamariscifolia Extract	Cystoseira Tamariscifolia Extract (0.5 – 10%), glycerin, and water	20%; 25µL	105	A HRIPT was performed. Occlusive conditions.	Non-irritating; Non-sensitizing	128,238
Dictyopteris Polypodioides Extract	Dictyopteris Polypodioides Extract (0.5 – 10%), water, and glycerin	100%	50	Repeated epicutaneous applications. Occlusive conditions.	Non-irritating; Non-sensitizing	128
Dictyopteris Polypodioides Extract	Dictyopteris Polypodioides Extract (0.5 – 10%) and water	100%; 25 µL	50	Repeated epicutaneous applications. Occlusive conditions.	Non-irritating; Non-sensitizing	128,238
Dictyopteris Polypodioides Extract	Dictyopteris Polypodioides Extract (0.5 – 10%) , caprylic/capric triglyceride	100%; 25µL	50	A HRIPT was performed. Occlusive conditions.	Non-irritating; Non-sensitizing	128,238
Fucus Spiralis Extract	Trade name mixture consisting of Fucus Spiralis Extract (1-3%) in butylene glycol and water	100%; 200 µL	50	A HRIPT was performed. Occlusive conditions	Non-sensitizing	133
Fucus Spiralis Extract	Fucus Spiralis Extract (12%), tetraselmis chui extract (8%), and water (8%)	100%	105	A HRIPT was performed. No dosing details were provided.	Non-sensitizing	134
Fucus Vesiculosus Extract	Trade name mixture containing Fucus Vesiculosus Extract (0.1%)	10%; 0.2 mL	58	A HRIPT was performed. Semi-occlusive conditions.	Non-sensitizing	136
Fucus Vesiculosus Extract	Trade name mixture containing Fucus Vesiculosus Extract (0.1%)	100%; 0.2 mL	56	A HRIPT was performed. Semi-occlusive conditions.	Non-sensitizing	135

Table 31. Dermal irritation and sensitization

Ingredient	Test Substance	Concentration/Dose of the test substance	Test Population	Procedure	Results	Reference
Fucus Vesiculosus Extract	Trade name mixture consisting of Fucus Vesiculosus Extract (5%) and caprylic/capric triglycerides (95%)	100%; 200 µL	52	A HRIPT was performed. Occlusive conditions.	Non-sensitizing	119
Halidrys Siliquosa Extract	Halidrys Siliquosa Extract (48%) and water (52%)	100%	107	A HRIPT was performed. Occlusive conditions.	Non-sensitizing	65
Halopteris Scoparia Extract	Halopteris Scoparia Extract (0.5 – 10%), water, dipropylene glycol	100%; 15 µL	50	Repeated epicutaneous applications. Occlusive conditions. 40 day test period.	Non-sensitizing	128,238
Himantalia Elongata Extract	Cream containing 0.2% Himantalia Elongata Extract	100%	102	A HRIPT was performed. Occlusive conditions.	Non-irritating; Non-sensitizing	127
Laminaria Digitata Extract	Laminaria Digitata Extract (<5%) in caprylic/capric triglycerides	100%; 20 µL	46	A HRIPT was performed. Occlusive conditions.	Non-sensitizing	137
Laminaria Digitata Extract	Trade name mixture containing Laminaria Digitata Extract (8-12%), urea (12-18%), synthetic glucosamine HCl (10-15%), saccharomyces cerevisiae extract (8-12%), and phenoxyethanol (0.8%)	10%; 0.2 mL (liquid) or 0.2 g (solid)	100	A HRIPT was performed. Occlusive conditions.	Non-irritating; Non-sensitizing	138
Laminaria Digitata Extract	Trade name mixture containing Laminaria Digitata Extract (≤ 10%), artemisia vulgaris extract (≤ 10%), phenoxyethanol (0.8%), and water	20%; 0.2 mL (liquid) or 0.2 g (solid)	100	A HRIPT was performed. Occlusive conditions.	Non-irritating; Non-sensitizing	96
Laminaria Ochroleuca Extract	Trade name mixture containing Laminaria Ochroleuca Extract (<5%) in caprylic/capric triglyceride	100%; 0.2 mL	52	A HRIPT was performed. Occlusive conditions.	Non-irritating; Non-sensitizing	145
Laminaria Saccharina Extract	Trade name mixture containing Laminaria Saccharina Extract (1-3%) in water and propylene glycol	20%; 25 µL	50	The test substance was applied (under an occlusive patch) 3 times a week during the induction phase and once a week during challenge phase. The induction phase lasts for 3 weeks, followed by a latent phase which lasts for 2 weeks.	Non-irritating; Non-sensitizing	132
Macrocystis Pyrifera (Kelp) Extract	Macrocystis Pyrifera (Kelp) Extract (water extract)	4%	53	A HRIPT was performed. Occlusive conditions.	Non-irritating; Non-sensitizing	106
Pelvetia Canaliculata Extract	Trade name mixture containing Pelvetia Canaliculata Extract (0.5-3%) in water	100%; 200 µL	55	A HRIPT was performed. Occlusive conditions.	Non-irritating; Non-sensitizing	139
Pelvetia Canaliculata Extract	Pelvetia Canaliculata Extract (44%) and water (56%)	100%	111	A HRIPT was performed. Occlusive conditions.	Non-sensitizing	140
Phyllacantha Fibrosa Extract	Phyllacantha Fibrosa Extract (0.5 – 10%) in water	100%; 25 µL	50	Repeated cutaneous applications. Occlusive conditions.	Non-sensitizing	128,238
Sargassum Filipendula Extract	Face cream containing 1.2% Sargassum Filipendula Extract	0.2 g	206	A HRIPT was performed. A 4 cm ² occlusive patch was used.	Non-sensitizing	141
Sargassum Muticum Extract	Eye cream containing 0.076% Sargassum Muticum Extract	0.2 g	103	A HRIPT was performed. The test material was applied to the 1 inch ² absorbent pad portion of a clear adhesive dressing.	Non-sensitizing	142
Sargassum Muticum Extract	Skin care product containing 0.076% Sargassum Muticum Extract	0.2 g	104	A HRIPT was performed. The test material was applied to the 1 inch ² absorbent pad portion of a clear adhesive dressing.	Non-sensitizing	143

Table 31. Dermal irritation and sensitization

Ingredient	Test Substance	Concentration/Dose of the test substance	Test Population	Procedure	Results	Reference
Sphacelaria Scoparia Extract	Sphacelaria Scoparia Extract, water, and dipropylene glycol (test concentration unknown)	100%	50	Repeated epicutaneous applications. Occlusive conditions.	Hypoallergenic	54
Undaria Pinnatifida Extract	Trade name mixture containing Undaria Pinnatifida Extract (<5%) in caprylic/capric triglycerides	100%; 50 µL	100	A HRIPT was performed. Occlusive conditions.	Non-irritating; Non-sensitizing	144
Undaria Pinnatifida Extract	Undaria Pinnatifida Extract in caprylic/capric triglycerides	100%	100	A HRIPT was performed. Occlusive conditions.	Non-irritating; Non-sensitizing	128
Undaria Pinnatifida Extract	Undaria Pinnatifida Extract (0.5 – 10%) in glycerin and water	100%	100	A HRIPT was performed. Occlusive conditions.	Non-irritating; Non-sensitizing	128

ARE = Antioxidant Response Elements; HRIPT = Human Repeat Insult Patch Test; Nrf2 = Nuclear factor-erythroid 2-related factor; NR = Not Reported

Table 32. Ocular Irritation Studies

Test Article	Concentration/Dose	Test Population	Procedure	Results	Reference
IN VITRO					
Trade name mixture containing Ascophyllum Nodosum Extract (4.7%) in water (94.5%)	NR	NR	HET-CAM test	Non-irritating	70
Ascophyllum Nodosum Extract (40.5%), Halopteris Scoparia Extract (13.5%), and water	100%	NR	HET-CAM test; incubation for 11 days	Non-irritating	239
Cystoseira Amentacea/Caespitosa/Brachycarpa Extract (48%), water (52%)	100%	NR	HET-CAM test; incubation for 11 days	Slightly irritating	108
Fucus Serratus Extract (44%) and water (56%)	5%	NR	HET-CAM test; incubation for 11 days	Slightly irritating	240
Halidrys Siliquosa Extract (48%) in water (52%)	5%	NR	HET-CAM test; incubation for 11 days	Slightly irritating	65
Himanthalia Elongata Extract (20%), Undaria Pinnatifida Extract (37%), water (43%)	10%	NR	HET-CAM test	Slightly irritating	64
Himanthalia Elongata Extract (62%), Fucus Vesiculosus Extract (1.4%), saccharomyces cerevisiae extract (0.1%), water (36.5%)	10%	4	HET-CAM test	Slightly irritating	241
Trade name mixture containing Laminaria Digitata Extract (8-12%), urea (12-18%), synthetic glucosamine HCl (10-15%), saccharomyces cerevisiae extract (8-12%), and phenoxyethanol (0.8%)	5%; 0.3 mL (liquid) or 0.3 g (solid)	4	HET-CAM test; incubation for 10 days	Non-irritating	242
Laminaria Japonica Extract (7%), Nereocystis Leutkeana Extract (7%), Macrocyctis Pyrifera Extract (7%), and pentaerythrityl tetraethylhexanoate	50 µL (liquid) or 50 mg (solid)	NR	Test substance was applied to reconstructed cornea epithelium; after application, epithelia was incubated for 30 (liquid) or 90 (solid) minutes	Non-irritating	117
Laminaria Ochroleuca Extract (5%), caprylic/capric triglyceride (94.75%), tocopherols (0.25%)	10%	NR	HET-CAM test	Moderately irritating	147
Lessonia Nigrescens Extract (12%), water (44%), butylene glycol (44%)	10%	NR	HET-CAM test	Non-irritating	243

Table 32. Ocular Irritation Studies

Test Article	Concentration/Dose	Test Population	Procedure	Results	Reference
Macrocystis Pyrifera (Kelp) Extract	4%	NR	HET-CAM test	Mildly irritating	¹⁰⁶
Trade name mixture containing Sargassum Filipendula Extract (1.3%), water (81.78%), sorbitol (14%), hypnea musciformis extract (1.4%), gellidiela acerosa extract (1.3%), methylparaben (0.2%), propylparaben (0.025%)	100%, 50 µL (liquid) or 50 mg (solid)	2	Test substance was applied to reconstructed cornea epithelium and allowed to incubate for 90 minutes	Non-irritating	¹¹⁸
Sargassum Muticum Extract (46%) and water (54%)	100%	NR	HET-CAM test; incubation for 11 days	Slightly-irritating	²⁴⁴
Undaria Pinatifida Cell Culture Extract (24%) in water	50 µL (liquid) or 50 mg (solid)	NR	Test substance was applied to reconstructed cornea epithelium; after application, epithelia was incubated for 30 (liquid) or 90 (solid) minutes	Non-irritating	¹¹⁶
ANIMAL					
Ascophyllum Nodosum Extract	100 mg	3	OECD TG 405; New Zealand White rabbits; test substance was instilled into one eye of each rabbit and rinsed after 1 hour; examination occurred 1, 24, 48, and 72 hours, and 7 days after administration	The maximum irritation score was 6.7 out of 8 at 1 h post-instillation; the score decreased to 0 by day 7, which indicated that the induced changes were reversible, and thus, the effects of the test substance were classified as 'irritation' and not as 'corrosion.' The test substance was rated as a mild ocular irritant.	⁶
Ascophyllum Nodosum Extract	NR	NR	OECD TG 405; no other details were provided for this study	Slightly irritating	⁹³
Trade name mixture containing Laminaria Digitata Extract (≤ 10%), artemisia vulgaris extract (≤ 10%), phenoxyethanol (0.8%), and water	20%; 0.1 mL	6	The test material was placed on the everted lower lid of one eye of each New Zealand White rabbit. The upper and lower lids were then gently held together for one second before releasing. Lesions were evaluated at 24 and 72 hours post instillation.	Non-irritating	⁹⁶
HUMAN					
Eye cream containing 0.076% Sargassum Muticum Extract	100%	31	Test substance was applied to the eye contour of 31 subjects. Half of the subjects were soft-contact lens wearers. Exam was performed 4 weeks after usage.	Non-irritating	¹⁴⁹

NR = Not Reported

Table 33. Case Reports of brown algae

Ingredient/substance (dose, if known)	Details	Reference
Fucus vesiculosus supplement (1200 mg 3 times per day)	18-year-old female presented with polyuria, polydipsia, extreme faintness, and a general poor condition. She had been on a hypocaloric diet for 3 months and taking Fucus vesiculosus supplements. Renal biopsy showed widespread tubular degeneration, and diffuse lymphomonocytic infiltrate; the glomeruli displayed scarce and focal mesangial proliferation, but the basal membrane appeared intact. The supplement was tested for heavy metals: arsenic, 21.3 mg/kg; cadmium, 0.3 ppm; mercury, 0.06 ppm; and chrome, 4 ppm. The patient recovered within 1 year.	²⁴⁵
Kelp tablets	54-year-old female developed thrombocytopenia with mucocutaneous bleeding after ingesting kelp tablets (that contained 1.3 µg/g arsenic) twice daily for 6 weeks. Marrow aspirate demonstrated normal megakaryocytes and dyserythropoiesis. After discontinuation of the supplements and treatment with steroids and azathioprine, her platelet count recovered after 3 months.	¹⁵⁰
Kelp supplements	A 54-year-old woman presented with a 2-year history of worsening alopecia and memory loss. She also had a rash, increasing fatigue, nausea, and vomiting to the point of disablement. She took daily kelp supplements. A urine sample showed an arsenic level of 83.6 µg/g creatinine (normal < 50 µg/g creatinine). A sample from her kelp supplements contained 8.5 mg/kg arsenic. Within weeks of discontinuing the supplements, her symptoms resolved and arsenic blood and urine levels were undetectable.	¹⁵¹

Table 34. Oral clinical trials

Test Article	Extraction/ Solvent Method or Characterization	Study group	Study Details	Results	Reference
Ascophyllum Nodosum Powder (0.5 g/d)	Powdered plant	Healthy female subjects (n = 42)	After a 4-day period of keeping a food diary, subjects were administered capsules containing extract or potassium iodide daily for 14 days, then repeated 4-day food diary. All-day urine sample was collected on fourth day of run-in period and last day of treatment period (day 19) and fasted blood samples were collected on fourth day of run-in period and on day after treatment period (day 20).	There was an increase in urinary iodine concentrations (median 140 mg/l vs 78 mg/l) in the treatment group. TSH increased slightly but within normal range 2 subjects. Increase in TSH concentrations may be associated with iodine-induced hypothyroidism, especially in those subjects with low iodine stores, although no change in the concentrations of thyroid hormones was observed. There were no adverse events reported during this experiment.	¹⁵²
Ecklonia Cava Extract (400 mg/d)	Alcohol	Subjects with hyper- cholesterolaemia (n = 52)	Uncontrolled, open-label, single-arm study for 12 weeks	Hematological, clinical chemistry, and urinalysis did not reveal any adverse effects. There was one instance (2.2%) each of nausea, dyspepsia, diarrhea, and alopecia reported.	^{9,153}
Ecklonia Cava Extract (0, 72, or 144 mg/d)	Phlorotannin-rich	Overweight subjects (n = 32 or 33)	Randomized, double-blind, three-arm, parallel trial for 12 weeks	Hematological and clinical chemistry did not reveal any adverse effects. Only high-dose group showed significant decreases in serum glucose and systolic blood pressure. No adverse signs were observed during the trial.	⁹
Ecklonia Cava Extract (0 or 400 mg/d)	Alcohol	Overweight subjects (n = 40)	Randomized, double-blind, and placebo-controlled trial for 12 weeks. Administered as 200 mg twice per day in capsules	There were no adverse events reported that were related to the test substance.	²⁹
Undaria Pinnatifida Powder (desalinated; 5040 mg/d)	Powdered	Hypertensive subjects (n = 18)	Subjects were gender and age matched to control group. Capsules (420 mg/capsule; 4 capsules/dose) 3 times/d with meals. Examined for body weight, BP, and blood chemistry parameters prior to experiment, at 4 weeks, and at 8 weeks. 1 subject in treatment group left study for personal reasons, so final number of paired subjects was 18, (some of her data (e.g., adverse effects) were used).	Compliance was not consistent; 6 subjects followed protocol; 1 ingested 9 capsules/d, 2 ingested 8 capsules/d, 6 ingested 6 capsules/d, and 3 ingested 3 capsules/d. Average intake was estimated to be 7.9 capsules or 3.3 g/d. Average SBP in treatment group decreased by 13 mmHg from the baseline after 4 weeks, and was reduced by 8 mmHg below baseline after 8 weeks. Average DBP decreased by 9 mmHg from baseline after 4 weeks and by 8 mmHg after 8 weeks. There were no significant changes in either SBP or DBP in control group. However, the differences in reductions in SBP and DBP were significant between the treatment group and control group. Hypercholesterolemia subjects in treatment group had decreased total cholesterol by 8% after 4 weeks; no changes were observed in subjects with normal cholesterol levels. Adverse effects included 2 cases of indigestion and 1 case of diarrhea, all of which resolved quickly without treatment.	⁶⁷

BP = blood pressure; DBP = diastolic blood pressure; SBP = systolic blood pressure; TSH = thyroid-stimulating hormone

Table 35. Change in menstrual cycle with the oral administration of Fucus Vesiculosus Powder¹⁵⁴

Subject	Menstrual cycle length			Days of Menstruation		
	Baseline	Low-Dose	High-Dose	Baseline	Low-Dose	High-Dose
1	16.3 ± 0.6 days	26.0 ± 1.4 days	31.2 ± 1.1 days	9.3 ± 0.6 days	6.3 ± 1.8 days	4.5 ± 0.7 days
2	23.0 ± 1.7 days	28.5 ± 0.7 days	-	8.0 ± 1.0 days	5.3 ± 2.5 days	-
3	27.3 ± 0.6 days	31.5 ± 0.7 days	36.0 ± 2.8 days	6.3 ± 1.5 days	5.8 ± 0.4 days	3.5 ± 0.7 days

Table 36. Data profile of brown-algae ingredients

Ingredient	GRAS	Food	Tox	Sensitization data
Agarum Cribrosum Extract				✓
Alaria Esculenta Extract		✓		✓
Ascophyllum Nodosum			✓ - 4 week oral	✓
Ascophyllum Nodosum Extract		✓	✓ - 4 week oral	✓
Ascophyllum Nodosum Powder		✓		✓
Cladosiphon Okamuranus Extract		✓	✓ - 3 month oral	
Cystoseira Amentacea/Caespitosa/Branchycarpa Extract				✓
Cystoseira Baccata Extract (synonymous with Phyllacantha Fibrosa)		✓		✓
Cystoseira Compressa Extract		✓		✓
Cystoseira Compressa Powder		✓		✓
Cystoseira Tamariscifolia Extract		✓		✓
Dictyopteris Polypodiodes Extract				✓
Ecklonia Cava Extract		✓	✓ - 13 week oral	
Ecklonia Cava Water		✓		
Eisenia Arborea Extract		✓		
Fucus Serratus Extract		✓		
Fucus Spiralis Extract		✓		✓
Fucus Vesiculosus		✓		✓
Fucus Vesiculosus Extract		✓	✓ - 4 week oral	✓
Fucus Vesiculosus Powder		✓		✓
Halidrys Siliquosa Extract				✓
Halopteris Scoparia Extract (synonymous with Sphacelaria Scoparia Extract)				✓
Himanthalia Elongata Extract		✓		✓
Himanthalia Elongata Powder		✓		✓
Hizikia Fusiforme Extract (synonymous with Sargassum Fusiforme Extract)	✓	✓		
Hizikia Fusiformis Water	✓	✓		
Hizikia Fusiformis Callus Culture Extract	✓	✓		
Hydrolyzed Ecklonia Cava Extract		✓	✓ - 13 wk oral	
Hydrolyzed Fucus Vesiculosus Extract		✓	✓ - 4 wk oral	✓
Hydrolyzed Fucus Vesiculosus Protein		✓	✓ - 4 wk oral	✓
Laminaria Cloustoni Extract (synonymous with Laminaria Hyperborea Extract)	✓			
Laminaria Diabolica Extract (synonymous with Laminaria Japonica Extract, Laminaria Ochroleuca Extract, and Saccharina Japonica Extract)	✓	✓	✓ - 6 week oral	✓
Laminaria Digitata Extract	✓	✓		✓

Table 36. Data profile of brown-algae ingredients

Ingredient	GRAS	Food	Tox	Sensitization data
Laminaria Digitata Powder	✓			✓
Laminaria Hyperborea Extract (synonymous with Laminaria Cloustoni Extract)	✓			
Laminaria Japonica Extract (synonymous with Laminaria Diabolica Extract, Laminaria Ochroleuca Extract, and Saccharina Japonica Extract)	✓	✓	✓ - 6 week oral	✓
Laminaria Japonica Powder				
Laminaria Longissima Extract	✓	✓	✓ - lifetime oral	✓
Laminaria Ochroleuca Extract (synonymous with Laminaria Diabolica Extract, Laminaria Japonica Extract, and Saccharina Japonica Extract)	✓	✓	✓ - 6 week oral	✓
Laminaria Saccharina Extract	✓	✓		✓
Macrocystis Pyrifera (Kelp)	✓	✓		✓
Macrocystis Pyrifera (Kelp) Blade/Pneumatocyst/Stipe Juice Extract	✓	✓		✓
Macrocystis Pyrifera (Kelp) Extract	✓	✓		✓
Macrocystis Pyrifera (Kelp) Juice	✓	✓		✓
Macrocystis Pyrifera (Kelp) Protein	✓	✓		✓
Nereocystis Leutkeana Extract	✓			
Pelvetia Canaliculata Extract				✓
Phyllacantha Fibrosa Extract (synonymous with Cystoseira Baccata Extract)		✓		✓
Saccharina Angustata Extract		✓		
Saccharina Japonica Extract (synonymous with Laminaria Diabolica Extract, Laminaria Japonica Extract, and Laminaria Ochroleuca Extract)	✓	✓	✓ - 6 week oral	✓
Saccharina Longicuris Extract		✓		
Sargassum Filipendula Extract		✓		✓
Sargassum Fulvellum Extract		✓		
Sargassum Fusiforme Extract (synonymous with Hizikia Fusiforme Extract)	✓	✓		
Sargassum Glaucescens Extract		✓		
Sargassum Horneri Extract		✓		
Sargassum Muticum Extract		✓		✓
Sargassum Pallidum Extract		✓		
Sargassum Siliquastrum Extract		✓		
Sargassum Thunbergii Extract		✓		
Sargassum Vulgare Extract		✓		

Table 36. Data profile of brown-algae ingredients

Ingredient	GRAS	Food	Tox	Sensitization data
Sphacelaria Scoparia Extract (synonymous with Halopteris Scoparia Extract)				✓
Undaria Peterseniana Extract		✓		
Undaria Pinnatifida Cell Culture Extract	✓	✓		✓
Undaria Pinnatifida Extract	✓	✓	✓ - 32 week oral	✓
Undaria Pinnatifida Leaf/Stem Extract	✓	✓		✓

REFERENCES

1. Nikitakis J and Kowcz A. Web-based International Cosmetic Ingredient Dictionary and Handbook (wINCI *Dictionary*). <http://webdictionary.personalcarecouncil.org/jsp/Home.jsp>. Last Updated 2018. Date Accessed 7-23-2018.
2. Dayton P. Ecology of kelp communities. *Annual Review of Ecology and Systematics*. 1985;16:215-245. <https://www.annualreviews.org/doi/abs/10.1146/annurev.es.16.110185.001243?journalCode=ecolsys.1>.
3. Becker LC, Bergfeld WF, Belsito DV, et al. Safety assessment of phytosterols as used in cosmetics. Washington, DC: Cosmetic Ingredient Review (CIR). 2014. <http://online.personalcarecouncil.org/ctfa-static/online/lists/cir-pdfs/FR651.pdf>. Date Accessed 7-23-2018, pp. 1-23.
4. Johnson Jr WJ, Heldreth B, Bergfeld WF, Belsito DV, Hill RA, Klaassen CD, Liebler DC, Marks Jr JG, Shank RC, Slaga TJ, Snyder PW, and Gill LJ. Safety assessment of polysaccharide gums as used in cosmetics. 2015. pp.1-87. Washington, DC: Cosmetic Ingredient Review (CIR). Available from CIR (<https://www.cir-safety.org/ingredients>). Date Accessed 7-23-2018
5. European Chemicals Agency (ECHA). Ascophyllum nodosum, extract; EC number: 700-983-2. <http://echa.europa.eu/registration-dossier/-/registered-dossier/7294>. Last Updated 2017. Date Accessed 7-23-2018.
6. European Chemicals Agency (ECHA). Ascophyllum nodosum, ext. EC number: 283-907-6, CAS number: 84775-78-0. <http://echa.europa.eu/registration-dossier/-/registered-dossier/14266>. Last Updated 2017. Date Accessed 7-23-2018.
7. European Medicines Agency (EMA). Assessment report on *Fucus vesiculosus* L., thallus-final. London, United Kingdom: European Medicines Agency. 2014. http://www.ema.europa.eu/docs/en_GB/document_library/Herbal_-_HMPc_assessment_report/2015/07/WC500190398.pdf. Date Accessed 7-23-2018. Report No. EMA/HMPC/313675/2012. pp. 1-55.
8. European Medicines Agency (EMA). Bladderwrack: *Fucus vesiculosus* L., thalus. London, United Kingdom: European Medicines Agency. 2016. http://www.ema.europa.eu/docs/en_GB/document_library/Herbal_-_Summary_of_assessment_report_for_the_public/2016/12/WC500217520.pdf. Date Accessed 7-23-2018. Report No. EMA/661584/2016. pp. 1-2.
9. European Food Safety Authority (EFSA) Panel on Dietetic Products, Nutrition and Allergies (NDA) Turck, D, Bresson J-L, Burlingame B, et al. Safety of *Ecklonia cava* phlorotannins as a novel food pursuant to Regulation (EC) No 258/97. *EFSA Journal*. 2017;15(10):5003-5018. <http://efsa.onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/epdf/10.2903/j.efsa.2017.5003>.
10. Food Standards Australia New Zealand (FSANZ). Survey of inorganic arsenic in seaweed and seaweed-containing products available in Australia. 2013. <http://www.foodstandards.gov.au/science/surveillance/Documents/Survey%20of%20inorganic%20arsenic%20in%20seaweed%20and%20seaweed%20.pdf>. Date Accessed 4-3-2018, pp. 1-23.
11. Food Standards Australia New Zealand (FSANZ). Imported food risk statement: Hijiki seaweed and inorganic arsenic. 2016. <https://www.foodstandards.gov.au/consumer/importedfoods/Documents/Hijiki%20seaweed%20and%20inorganic%20arsenic.pdf>. Date Accessed 7-23-2018, pp. 1-8.
12. Lowe RL. Algal diversity and application. 2015. Unpublished information presented to the March 17 CIR Expert Panel. Washington D.C.
13. Bhutia TK, Petruzzello M, Pallardy R, and Rimsa C. Brown Algae. *Encyclopaedia Britannica* 2018. <https://www.britannica.com/science/brown-algae>. Last Updated 3-10-2018. Date Accessed 6-11-2018.
14. Fleurence J. Seaweed proteins: biochemical, nutritional aspects and potential uses. *Trends in Food Science & Technology*. 1999;10(1):25-28.
15. Mori K, Ooi T, Hiraoka M, et al. Fucoxanthin and its metabolites in edible brown algae cultivated in deep seawater. *Marine Drugs*. 2004;2(2):63-72.
16. McHugh DJ. A guide to the seaweed industry. 2003. FAO Fisheries Technical Paper 441: pp.1-118. Rome, Italy: Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations.
17. Lüning K and Pang S. Mass cultivation of seaweeds: current aspects and approaches. *Journal of Applied Phycology*. 2003;15(2-3):115-119.
18. Borrás-Chavez R, Edwards MS, Arvizu-Higuera DL, et al. Repetitive harvesting of *Macrocystis pyrifera* (Phaeophyceae) and its effects on chemical constituents of economic value. *Botanica Marina*. 2016;59(1):63-71.
19. Yamashita Y. Method of removing inorganic arsenic from dried hijiki seaweed products. *Nippon Suisan Gakkaishi*. 2014;80(6):973-978.
20. Francesconi KA and Edmonds JS. Arsenic species in marine samples. *Croatica Chemica Acta*. 1998;71(2):343-359.

21. Kuehnelt D, Irgolic KJ, and Goessler W. Comparison of three methods for the extraction of arsenic compounds from the NRCC standard reference material DORM-2 and the brown alga *Hijiki fuziforme*. *Applied Organometallic Chemistry*. 2001;15(6):445-456.
22. Hamano-Nagaoka M, Hanaoka K, Usui M, et al. Nitric acid-based partial-digestion method for selective determination of inorganic arsenic in hijiki and application to soaked hijiki. *Journal of Food Hygienic Society of Japan*. 2008;49(2):88-94.
23. Katayama M, Sugawa-Katayama Y, and Murakami K. Pre-cooking of edible marine brown algae for reduction of arsenic contents. *Journal of Food and Nutrition Sciences*. 2015;3(1-2):84-87.
24. Biotech Marine. 2015. Manufacturing process Alariane™ AD (Alaria Esculenta Extract in butylene glycol and water- dried before extraction). Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on September 10, 2018.
25. Biotech Marine. 2015. Manufacturing process Juvenessence™ (Alaria Esculenta Extract in Caprylic Capric Triglycerides). Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on September 11, 2018.
26. Solabia Group. 2017. Manufacturing Process Invincity® (trade name mixture containing Ascophyllum Nodosum Extract). Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on August 9, 2018.
27. Solabia Group. 2017. Personal Care Products Council (PCPC) Unpublished Data: Manufacturing Process Invincity® (trade name mixture containing Ascophyllum Nodosum Extract).
28. El Hattab M, Culioli G, Piovetti L, et al. Comparison of various extraction methods for identification and determination of volatile metabolites from the brown alga *Dictyopteris membranacea*. *Journal of Chromatography A*. 2007;1143(1-2):1-7.
29. Choi E-K, Park S-H, Ha K-C, et al. Clinical trial of the hypolipidemic effects of a brown alga *Ecklonia cava* extract in patients with hypercholesterolemia. *International Journal of Pharmacology*. 2015;11(7):798-805.
30. Biotech Marine. 2015. Manufacturing process Pyrenoine™ PF (Fucus Spiralis Extract in butylene glycol and water). Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on September 13, 2018.
31. Anonymous. 2018. Method of manufacture and composition brown-algae-derived ingredients (Fucus Vesiculosus Extract and Hizikia Fusiforme Extract). Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on September 12, 2018.
32. Biotech Marine. 2015. Manufacturing process Oleaphycol FV (Fucus Vesiculosus Extract in Caprylic/Capric Triglyceride). Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on September 13, 2018.
33. Biotech Marine. 2017. Manufacturing process Oleaphycol LD (Laminaria Digitata Extract in Caprylic/Capric Triglyceride). Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on September 13, 2018.
34. Ruxton CHS and Jenkins G. A novel topical ingredient derived from seaweed significantly reduces symptoms of acne vulgaris: A general literature review. *Journal of Cosmetic Science*. 2013;64(3):219-226.
35. Biotech Marine. 2017. Manufacturing process Phycol™ LD (Laminaria Digitata Extract water and propylene glycol). Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on September 13, 2018.
36. Biotech Marine. 2017. Manufacturing process Phycoboreane™ 2C (Laminaria Hyperborea Extract in water). Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on 9/11/18.
37. Active Concepts. 2013. AC Hydrating Seaweed Complex (mixture of Laminaria Japonica, Nereocystis Leutkeana and Macrocystis Pyrifera Extracts) manufacturing flow chart. Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on September 12, 2018.
38. Biotech Marine. 2014. Manufacturing process Antileukin 6 (Laminaria Ochroleuca Extract in Caprylic/Capric Triglyceride). Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on 9/11/18.
39. Biotech Marine. 2014. Manufacturing process Phlorogine (Laminaria Saccharina in Water and Propylene Glycol). Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on 9/11/18.
40. Biotech Marine. 2009. Macrocystis Pyrifera DG (Macrocystis Pyrifera Extract- extracted in water with added Methylpropanediol). Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on September 13, 2018.
41. Biotech Marine. 2017. Manufacturing process Phycol™ PC BG/PF (Pelvetia Caliculata Extract in Butylene Glycol and Water). Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on September 22, 2018.
42. Biotech Marine. 2017. Manufacturing process Ambre Oceane™ 2C (Pelvetia Caliculata Extract in Water). Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on 9/11/18.
43. Biotech Marine. 2015. Manufacturing process Ambre Oceane™ SPE (Pelvetia Caliculata Extract in Water). Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on 9/11/18.

44. Biotech Marine. 2014. Manufacturing Process- Bioenergizer P BG (mixture of *Pelvetia canaliculata* and *Laminaria digitata* extracted in Butylene Glycol with Panthenol, with preservatives). Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on 9/13/18.
45. Biotech Marine. 2014. Manufacturing Process- Bioenergizer P (mixture of *Pelvetia canaliculata* and *Laminaria digitata* extracted in Propylene Glycol with Panthenol). Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on 9/13/18.
46. Bedoux G, Hardouin K, Burlot AS, and Bourgougnon N. Bioactive components from seaweeds: cosmetic applications and future development. Chapter: 12. In: *Advances in Botanical Research*. Vol. 71. Elsevier Ltd.; 2013:345-378.
47. Biotech Marine. 2014. Manufacturing Process- Epher™ (Undaria Pinnatifida Extract in Caprylic/Capric Triglyceride). Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on 9/13/18.
48. Biotech Marine. 2016. Manufacturing Process- Phycol UP (Undaria Pinnatifida Extract in Water and Propylene Glycol). Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on 9/13/18.
49. Fujimura T, Tsukahara K, Moriwaki S, et al. Treatment of human skin with an extract of *Fucus vesiculosus* changes in its thickness and mechanical properties. *Journal of Cosmetic Science*. 2002;53(1):1-9.
50. Simmons-Boyce JL, Purcell SL, Nelson CM, et al. Dietary *Ascophyllum nodosum* increases urinary excretion of tricarboxylic acid cycle intermediates in male Sprague-Dawley rats. *Journal of Nutrition*. 2009;139(8):1487-1494.
51. Jang WS and Choung SY. Antiobesity effects of the ethanol extract of *Laminaria japonica* Areshoung in high-fat-diet-induced obese rat. *Evidence-Based Complementary and Alternative Medicine*. 2013;2013(January):492807
52. Gideon TP and Rengasamy R. Toxicological evaluation of fucoidan from *Cladosiphon okamuranus*. *Journal of Medicinal Food*. 2008;11(4):638-642.
53. Sakakibara H, Nakagawa S, Wakameda H, et al. Effects of Japanese kelp (kombu) on life span of benzo[a]pyrene-fed mice. *Journal of Nutritional Science and Vitaminology*. 2005;51(5):369-373.
54. UNITIS. 2018. Safety report on brown algae-derived ingredients as used in cosmetics. Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on 9/13/18.
55. Kang JY, Khan MNA, Park NH, et al. Antipyretic, analgesic, and anti-inflammatory activities of the seaweed *Sargassum fluvellum* and *Sargassum thunbergii* in mice. *Journal of Ethnopharmacology*. 2008;116(1):187-190.
56. Choi J-S, Moon WS, Choi JN, et al. Effects of seaweed *Laminaria japonica* extracts moisturizing activity *in vivo*. *Journal of Cosmetic Science*. 2013;64(3):193-205.
57. Hwang P-A, Yan M-D, Lin H-TV, et al. Toxicological evaluation of low molecular weight fucoidan *in vitro* and *in vivo*. *Marine Drugs*. 2016;14(7):E121
58. Davis TA, Volesky B, and Mucci A. A review of the biochemistry of heavy metal biosorption by brown algae. *Water Research*. 2003;37(18):4311-4330.
59. Gayinski M, Annick O, Thomas O, et al. Extraction, Purification, and NMR Analysis of Terpenes from Brown Algae. *Methods in Molecular Biology*. 2015;207-220.
60. Safe LM, Wong CJ, and Chandler RF. Sterols of marine algae. *Journal of Pharmaceutical Sciences*. 1974;63(3):464-466.
61. Lopes G, Sousa C, Bernardo J, et al. Sterol profiles in 18 macroalgae of the Portuguese coast. *Journal of Phycology*. 2011;47(5):1210-1218.
62. Güner A, Köksal Ç, Erel SB, et al. Antimicrobial and antioxidant activities with acute toxicity, cytotoxicity and mutagenicity of *Cystoseira compressa* (Esper) Gerloff & Nizamuddin from the coast of Urla (Izmir, Turkey). *Cytotechnology*. 2015;67(1):135-143.
63. Andrade PB, Barbosa M, Matos RP, et al. Valuable compounds in macroalgae extracts. *Food Chemistry*. 2012;138(2-3):1819-1828.
64. Anonymous. 2018. Specifications, source and safety information Himanthalia Elongata Extract and Undaria Pinnatifida Extract (aqueous extracts). Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on 11/5/18.
65. Anonymous. 2018. Specifications, source and safety information Halidrys Siliquosa Extract (aqueous extract). Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on 11/5/18.
66. Chung H-J, Jeun J, Hwang S-J, et al. Toxicological evaluation of fucoidan from *Undaria pinnatifida* *in vitro* and *in vivo*. *Phytotherapy Research*. 2010;24(7):1078-1083.
67. Hata Y, Nakajima K, Uchida J-I, et al. Clinical effects of brown seaweed, *Undaria pinnatifida* (wakame), on blood pressure in hypertensive subjects. *Journal of Clinical Biochemistry and Nutrition*. 2001;30(January):43-53.

68. Yoshi-Stark Y, Hsieh Y, and Suzuki T. Distribution of flavanoids and related compounds from seaweeds in Japan. *Journal of Tokyo University of Fisheries*. 2003;89:1-6.
69. Llorente-Mirandes T, Ruiz-Chancho MJ, Barbero M, et al. Determination of water-soluble arsenic compounds in commercial edible seaweed by LC-ICPMS. *Journal of Agricultural and Food Chemistry*. 2011;59(24):12963-12968.
70. Solabia Group. 2017. Specifications data sheet Invincity® (trade name mixture containing Ascophyllum Nodosum Extract). Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on August 9, 2018.
71. Besada V, Andrade J, Schultze F, et al. Heavy metals in edible seaweeds commercialised for human consumption. *Journal of Marine Systems*. 2018;75(1-2):305-313.
72. Luoma SN, Bryan GW, and Langston WJ. Scavenging of heavy metals from particulates by brown seaweed. *Marine Pollution Bulletin*. 1982;13(11):394-396.
73. Giusti L. Heavy metal contamination of brown seaweed and sediments from the UK coastline between the Wear river and Tees river. *Environmental International*. 2001;26(4):275-286.
74. Namikoshi M, Fujiwara T, Nishikawa T, et al. Natural abundance ¹⁴C content of dibutyl phthalate (DBP) from three marine algae. *Marine Drugs*. 2006;4(4):290-297.
75. U.S. Food and Drug Administration Center for Food Safety & Applied Nutrition (CFSAN). Voluntary Cosmetic Registration Program - Frequency of Use of Cosmetic Ingredients. College Park, MD: 2019. Obtained under the Freedom of Information Act from CFSAN; requested as "Frequency of Use Data".
76. Personal Care Products Council. 7-7-2015. Concentration of Use by FDA Product Category: Additional Algae-Derived Ingredients. Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on July 7, 2015.
77. Personal Care Products Council. 2-16-2016. Concentration of Use by FDA Product Category: Brown Algae Additions. Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council.
78. Johnsen MA. The Influence of Particle Size. *Spray Technology and Marketing*. 2004;14(11):24-27. <http://www.spraytechnology.com/index.mv?screen=backissues>.
79. Rothe H. Special aspects of cosmetic spray safety evaluation. 2011. Unpublished information presented to the 26 September CIR Expert Panel. Washington D.C.
80. Bremmer HJ, Prud'homme de Lodder LCH, and van Engelen JGM. Cosmetics Fact Sheet: To assess the risks for the consumer; Updated version for ConsExpo 4. 2006. <http://www.rivm.nl/bibliotheek/rapporten/320104001.pdf>. Date Accessed 8-24-2011. Report No. RIVM 320104001/2006. pp. 1-77.
81. Rothe H, Fautz R, Gerber E, et al. Special aspects of cosmetic spray safety evaluations: Principles on inhalation risk assessment. *Toxicol Lett*. 8-28-2011;205(2):97-104. PM:21669261.
82. CIR Science and Support Committee of the Personal Care Products Council (CIR SSC). 11-3-2015. Cosmetic Powder Exposure. Unpublished data submitted by the Personal Care Products Council.
83. Aylott RI, Byrne GA, Middleton JD, et al. Normal use levels of respirable cosmetic talc: preliminary study. *Int J Cosmet Sci*. 1979;1(3):177-186. PM:19467066.
84. Russell RS, Merz RD, Sherman WT, et al. The determination of respirable particles in talcum powder. *Food Cosmet Toxicol*. 1979;17(2):117-122. PM:478394.
85. European Commission. CosIng database: following Cosmetic Regulation No. 1223/2009. <http://ec.europa.eu/growth/tools-databases/cosing/>. Last Updated 2018. Date Accessed 4-2-2018.
86. Brownlee I, Fairclough A, Sorsby A, and Paxman J. The potential health benefits of seaweed and seaweed extracts. Chapter: 6. Pomin V. In: *Seaweed: Ecology, Nutrient, Composition and Medicinal Uses*. Nova Science Publishers Inc.; 2019:
87. CEVA. Summary of edible seaweed and French regulation. 2014.
88. Vizetto-Duarte C, Custódio L, and Barreira L. Proximate biochemical composition and mineral content of edible species from the genus *Cystoseira* in Portugal. *Botanica Marina*. 2016;59(4)
89. PDR for herbal medicines. 2 ed. Montvale, NJ: Medical Economics Company, Inc., 2000.
90. Committee on Herbal Medicinal Products (HMPC). Assessment report on *Fucus vesiculosus* L., thallus. London, United Kingdom: European Medicines Agency (EMA). 2014. http://www.ema.europa.eu/docs/en_GB/document_library/Herbal_-_HMPC_assessment_report/2015/07/WC500190398.pdf. Date Accessed 7-23-2018. Report No. EMA/HMPC/313675/2012. pp. 1-55.

91. Bove M. Bladderwrack (*fucus vesiculosus*); and overview of the research and indications [pamphlet]. Gaia Herbs; 1000.
92. Anonymous. 2019. Summary information Agarum Cribosum Extract. Unpublished data submitted by the Personal Care Products Council on April 19, 2019.
93. Solabia Group. 8-9-2018. Ascophyllum Nodosum Extract. Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on August 9, 2018.
94. Yun J-W, Kim S-H, Kim Y-S, et al. Enzymatic extract from *Ecklonia cava*: acute and subchronic oral toxicity and genotoxicity studies. *Regulatory Toxicology and Pharmacology*. 2018;92(February):46-54.
95. Zaragozá MC, López D, Sáiz MP, et al. Toxicity and antioxidant activity in vitro and in vivo of two *Fucus vesiculosus* extracts. *Journal of Agricultural and Food Chemistry*. 2008;56(17):7773-7780.
96. Anonymous. 1997. Safety study summary: Acute oral, primary ocular irritation, primary skin irritation and repeat insult patch test. Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on 11/27/18.
97. Michiels J, Skrivanova E, Missotten J, et al. Intact brown seaweed (*Ascophyllum nodosum*) in diets of weaned piglets: effects on performance, gut bacteria and morphology and plasma oxidative status. *Journal of Animal Physiology and Animal Nutrition*. 2012;96(6):1101-1111.
98. Yeo A-R, Lee J, Tae IH, et al. Anti-hyperlipidemic effect of polyphenol extract (Seapolynol™) and dieckol isolated from *Ecklonia cava* in *in vivo* and *in vitro* models. *Preventive Nutrition and Food Science*. 2012;17(1):1-7.
99. Funahashi H, Imai T, Mase T, et al. Seaweed prevents breast cancer? *Japanese Journal of Cancer Research*. 2001;92(5):483-487.
100. Funahashi H, Imai T, Tanaka Y, et al. Wakame seaweed suppresses the proliferation of 7,12-dimethylbenz(a)anthracene-induced mammary tumors in rats. *Japanese Journal of Cancer Research*. 1999;90(9):922-927.
101. Anonymous. 2011. Genetic mutation bacteria in vitro test (Ames Test) (trade name mixture containing 1-3% Cystoseira Compressa Extract). Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on August 29, 2019.
102. Vivotecnia. 2014. Summary: Bacterial reverse mutation test (Water, Fucus Spiralis Extract and Tetraselmis Chi Extract). Unpublished data submitted by the Personal Care Products Council on January 28, 2019.
103. Leite-Silva C, Gusmão CLS, and Takahashi CS. Genotoxic and antigenotoxic effects of *Fucus vesiculosus* extract on cultured human lymphocytes using the chromosome aberration and Comet assays. *Genetics and Molecular Biology*. 2007;30(1):105-111.
104. Lessonia. 2015. Safety certificate: Fucoreverse PF (contains 7% hydrolyzed fucoidan). Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on August 8, 2018.
105. SafePharm Laboratories. 2005. Reverse mutation assay "Ames test" using *Salmonella typhimurium* (Laminaria Saccharina DJ- Laminaria Saccharina Extract in Sea Water and Methylpropanediol). Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on 9/11/18.
106. Solabia Group. 10-23-2018. Macrocystis Pyrifera (Kelp) Extract. Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on 10/23/18.
107. Active Concepts. 2016. Study summary: Bacterial reverse mutation test ACB Wakame Bioferment Advanced (Undaria Pinnatifida Cell Culture Extract). Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on 10/3/18.
108. Anonymous. 2018. Specifications, source and safety information Cystoseira Amentacea/Caespitosa/Brachycarpa (aqueous extract). Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on 11/5/18.
109. Ohigashi H, Sakai Y, Yamaguchi K, et al. Possible anti-tumor promoting properties of marine algae and *in vivo* activity of wakame seaweed extract. *Bioscience, Biotechnology, and Biochemistry*. 1992;56(6):994-995.
110. Son Y-S, Ullah HMA, Elfadl AK, et al. Inhibition of formation of azoxymethane-induced colonic aberrant crypt foci in rats by edible green algae *Capsosiphon fulvescens* and brown algae *Hizikia fusiforme*. *In Vivo*. 2018;32(1):101-108.
111. Teas J, Harbison ML, and Gelman RS. Dietary seaweed (*Laminaria*) and mammary carcinogenesis in rats. *Cancer Research*. 1984;44(7):2758-2761.
112. Zhang R-L, Luo W-D, Bi T-N, et al. Evaluation of antioxidant and immunity-enhancing activities of *Sargassum pallidum* aqueous extract in gastric cancer rats. *Molecules*. 2012;17(7):8419-8429.
113. Skibola CF, Curry JD, VandeVoort C, et al. Brown kelp modulates endocrine hormones in female Sprague-Dawley rats and in human luteinized granulosa cells. *The Journal of Nutrition*. 2005;135(2):296-300.
114. Zhang J, Riby JE, Conde L, et al. A *Fucus vesiculosus* extract inhibits estrogen receptor activation and induces cell death in female cancer cell lines. *Complementary and Alternative Medicine*. 2016;15(May):151 <http://doi.org/10.1186/s12906-016-1129-6>.

115. Piao MJ, Yoon WJ, Kang HK, et al. Protective effect of the ethyl acetate fraction of *Sargassum miticum* against ultraviolet B-irradiated damage in human keratinocytes. *International Journal of Molecular Sciences*. 2011;12(11):8146-8160.
116. Active Concepts. 2018. Study summaries: Dermal and ocular irritation tests ACB Wakame Bioferment Advanced (Undaria Pinnatifida Cell Culture Extract). Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on 10/3/18.
117. Active Concepts. 2016. Dermal and ocular irritation tests AC Hydrating Seaweed Complex (mixture of Laminaria Japonica, Nereocystis Leutkeana and Macrocystis Pyrifera Extracts). Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on September 12, 2018.
118. Active Concepts. 2018. Dermal and ocular irritation tests (AC Algae Blend Sorb [contains 1.3% Sargassum Filipendula Extract]). Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on 10/25/18.
119. Harrison Research Laboratories Inc. 1999. Repeated insult patch test Oleaphycol FV (Fucus Vesiculosus Extract in Caprylic/Capric Triglyceride). Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on September 13, 2018.
120. Palmer Research. 2004. Etude de la tolérance cutanée aiguë d'une matière première chez le volontaire adulte: Patch-test 24 heures occlusif sous contrôle dermatologique. Phycol LD (Laminaria Digitata Extract in Propylene Glycol and water). Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council September 13, 2018.
121. Palmer Research. 1996. Etude de la tolérance cutanée aiguë chez 10 volontaires adultes: Patch tests 24 et 48 heures, uniques: Phlorogine (Laminaria Saccharina Extract in Water and Propylene Glycol). Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on 9/11/18.
122. Palmer Research. 2004. Etude de la tolérance cutanée aiguë d'une matière première chez le volontaire adulte: Patch-test 24 heures occlusif sous contrôle dermatologique. Phycol PC BG (Pelvetia Canaliculata in Propylene Glycol and water).
123. Palmer Research. 2004. Etude de la tolérance cutanée aiguë d'une matière première chez le volontaire adulte: Patch-test 24 heures occlusif sous contrôle dermatologique (Phycol UP- Undaria Pinnatifida Extract in Water and Propylene Glycol). Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on 9/13/18.
124. Palmer Research. 1996. Etude de la tolérance cutanée aiguë chez 10 volontaires adultes Patchtests 24 et 48 heures, uniques (Bioenergizer P mixture of *Pelvetia canaliculata* and *Laminaria digitata* extracted in Propylene Glycol with Panthenol). Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on 9/13/18.
125. Active Concepts. 2016. Study summary: *In vitro* skin sensitization ACB Wakame Bioferment Advanced (Undaria Pinnatifida Cell Culture Extract). Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on 10/3/18.
126. Active Concepts. 2016. Study summary: *In chemico* skin sensitization ACB Wakame Bioferment Advanced (Undaria Pinnatifida Cell Culture Extract). Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on 10/3/18.
127. Anonymous. 2019. Summaries of Human Sensitization Studies of Products Containing Brown Algae-Derived Ingredients (Cystoseira Amentacea/Caespitosa/Brachycarpa Extract and Himanthalia Elongata Extract). Unpublished data submitted by the Personal Care Products Council on January 23, 2019.
128. UNITIS. 2019. Safety report on brown algae-derived ingredients as used in cosmetics. Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on 1/03/2019.
129. Liskin. 2008. Study of the sensitizing capacity of a product according to the Marzulli-Maibach method (Kalpariane™- Alaria Esculenta Extract in Caprylic Capric Triglycerides). Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on September 11, 2018.
130. Liskin. 2008. Study of the sensitizing capacity of a product according to the Marzulli-Maibach Method (Alariane- Alaria Esculenta Extract in butylene glycol and water). Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on September 11, 2018.
131. Liskin. 2012. Sensitizing potential study of a product according to Marsulli-Maibach method (Juvenessence™- Alaria Esculenta Extract in Caprylic Capric Triglycerides). Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on September 11, 2018.
132. Liskin. 2004. Evaluation of the irritating and sensitizing potential by 48-hours repeated application (Marzulli-Maibach method) Phlorogine (Laminaria Saccharina Extract in Water and Propylene Glycol). Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on 9/11/18.
133. Harrison Research Laboratories Inc. 1997. Repeated insult patch test Pyrenonine sur Base BG (Fucus Spiralis Extract in water and butylene glycol). Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on September 13, 2018.
134. CTI. 2014. Summary: Assessment of sensitizing potential and cutaneous compatibility on healthy adult volunteers according to the Marzulli-Maibach sensitization method Water, Fucus Spiralis Extract and Tetraselmis Chi Extract). Unpublished data submitted by the Personal Care Products Council on January 28, 2019.
135. Consumer Product Testing Co. 2013. Repeated insult patch test of a trade name mixture containing 0.1% Fucus Vesiculosus Extract (tested undiluted). Unpublished data submitted by the Personal Care Products Council on January 29, 2019.

136. Consumer Product Testing Co. 2016. Repeated insult patch test of a trade name mixture containing 0.1% Fucus Vesiculosus Extract (10% dilution tested). Unpublished data submitted by the Personal Care Products Council on January 29, 2019.
137. Harrison Research Laboratories Inc. 1999. Repeated insult patch test Oleaphycol LD Laminaria Digitata Extract in Caprylic/Capric Triglyceride). Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on September 13, 2018.
138. Anonymous. 1997. Repeated insult patch test (product 1 tested contains 8-12% Laminaria Digitata Extract). Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on 11/27/18.
139. Essex Testing Clinic Inc. 2002. Clinical safety evaluation repeated insult patch test Pelvetiane (Ambre Oceane 2C- Pelvetia Canaliculata Extract in Water). Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on 9/11/18.
140. Raben Production Group SRL. 2011. Assessment of sensitizing potential in the adult volunteer following the method ofMarzulli-Maibach (Water and Pelvetia Canaliculata Extract). Unpublished data submitted by the Personal Care Products Council on January 28, 2019.
141. Anonymous. 2007. Repeated insult patch test of a face cream containing 1.2% Sargassum Filipedula Extract. Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on September 12, 2018.
142. Consumer Product Testing Co. 2014. Repeated insult patch test (eye cream containing 0.076% Sargassum Muticum Extract). Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on August 20, 2018.
143. Consumer Product Testing Co. 2016. Repeated insult patch test (skin care product containing 0.076% Sargassum Muticum Extract). Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on August 20, 2018.
144. Groupe Dermascan. 2014. Assessment of the sensitizing potential of a cosmetic product (Ephemer Undaria Pinnatifida Extract in Caprylic/Capric Triglyceride). Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on 9/13/18.
145. Palmer Research. 1999. Evaluation du potentiel allergisant après applications épicutanées répétées sur 52 volontaires: Antileukine 6 (Laminaria Ochroleuca Extract in Caprylic/Capric Triglyceride). Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on 9/11/18.
146. Anonymous. 2011. Cutaneous sensitization test (trade name mixture containing 1-3% Cystoseira Compressa Extract). Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on August 29, 2019.
147. Eurofins ATS. 2013. Summary: Assessment of the irritant potential of a test item after application to the embryonic hen's egg chorioallantoic membrane- HET-CAM (mixture containing Caprylic/Capric Triglyceride, Laminaria Ochroleuca Extract and Tocopherol). Unpublished data submitted by the Personal Care Products Council on January 24, 2019.
148. Solabia Group. 2017. Toxicological file Invincity® (trade name mixture containing Ascophyllum Nodosum Extract). Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on August 9, 2018.
149. Consumer Product Testing Co. 2014. Ophthalmological in-use safety evaluation - 50% sensitive eyes (eye cream containing 0.076% Sargassum Muticum Extract). Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on August 20, 2018.
150. Pye KG, Kelsey SM, House IM, et al. Severe dyserythropoiesis and autoimmune thrombocytopenia associated with ingestion of kelp supplements. *Lancet*. 1992;339(8808):1540
151. Amster E, Tiwary A, and Schenker MB. Case report: Potential arsenic toxicosis secondary to herbal kelp supplement. *Environmental Health Perspectives*. 2007;115(4):606-608.
152. Combet E, Ma ZF, Cousins F, et al. Low-level seaweed supplementation improves iodine status in iodine-insufficient women. *British Journal of Nutrition*. 2014;112(5):753-761.
153. Lee DH, Park MY, and Jeon HK. Effects of *Ecklonia cava* polyphenol in individuals with hypercholesterolemia: a pilot study. *Journal of Medicinal Food*. 2012. 15:(11): pp.1038-1044.
154. Skibola CF. The effect of *Fucus vesiculosus*, an edible brown seaweed, upon menstrual cycle length and hormonal status in three pre-menopausal women: a case report. *BMC Complementary and Alternative Medicine*. 2004;4(1):10
155. The Columbia Encyclopedia. Chrysophyta. <https://www.encyclopedia.com/plants-and-animals/microbes-algae-and-fungi/moneran-and-protistan/chrysophyta>. Last Updated 2018. Date Accessed 6-11-2018.
156. Encyclopaedia Britannica. Dinoflagellate. <https://www.britannica.com/science/dinoflagellate>. Last Updated 2018. Date Accessed 6-11-2018.
157. Microsoft Encarta Online Encyclopedia 2000. Euglenoids. <http://encarta.msn.com>. Last Updated 2000. Date Accessed 6-11-2018.
158. Guiry MD. *AlgaeBase*. World-wide electronic publication. 2018. Galway, Ireland: National University of Ireland, Galway. http://www.algaebase.org/search/species/detail/?species_id=kfbb2c14027a14bf4&sk=0&from=results
159. Guiry MD. The Seaweed Site: information on marine algae. <http://www.seaweed.ie/index.php>. Last Updated 2018. Date Accessed 2-8-2018.

160. Gunnarsdóttir L. Masters. Rockweed (*Ascophyllum nodosum*) in Breidafjörður, Iceland: effects of environmental factors on biomass and plant height. 2017. pp.1-48. Reykjavik, Iceland: University of Iceland.
161. Food and Agricultural Organization (FAO) of the United Nations. Synopsis of biological data on knobbed wrack. Rome: 1970. <http://www.fao.org/docrep/017/b0672e/b0672e.pdf>. Date Accessed 2-7-2018. Report No. FAO Fisheries Synopsis No. 38 Rev. 1. pp. 1-50.
162. Balina K, Romagnoli F, and Blumberga D. Chemical composition and potential use of *Fucus vesiculosus* from Gulf of Riga. *Energy Procedia*. 2016;95(September):43-49.
163. Kain JM. Synopsis of biological data on *Laminaria hyperborea*. Rome: Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations. 1971. <http://www.fao.org/docrep/017/c3845e/c3845e.pdf>. Date Accessed 3-13-2018. Report No. FIRM/S87; SAST-Laminaria hyperborea-7,77(02)002.07. pp. 1-741.
164. Anderson BS and Hunt JW. Bioassay methods for evaluating the toxicity of heavy metals, biocides and sewage effluent using microscopic stages of giant kelp (*Macrocystis pyrifera* (Agardh): a preliminary report. *Marine Environmental Research*. 1988;26(2):113-134.
165. Graham MH, Vásquez JA, and Buschmann AH. Global ecology of the giant kelp *Macrocystis*: from ecotypes to ecosystems. Chapter: 2. Gibson, RN, Atkinson, RJA, and Gordon, JDM. In: *Oceanography and Marine Biology*. Vol. 45. 1 ed. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press; 2007:39-88.
166. Acadian Seaplants Limited. Material safety data sheet: ACADIAN™ Organic Liquid Seaweed Concentrate; 0.1-0.0-5.0 [pamphlet]. Nova Scotia, Canada: 2012.
167. Grow More, Inc. Safety data sheet: seaweed extract (liquid). *Ascophyllum Nodosum* 84775-78-0 [pamphlet]. Gardena, CA: 2014.
168. Organic Ocean. ACTIV material safety data sheet [pamphlet]. Rimouski, Canada: Organic Ocean; 2015.
169. Acadian Seaplants Limited. Material safety data sheet: ASL™ Kelp Meal or Flour [pamphlet]. Nova Scotia, Canada: Acadian Seaplants Limited; 2004.
170. Natural Sourcing. Material safety data sheet: organic kelp powder (*Ascophyllum nodosum*) [pamphlet]. Oxford, CT: Natural Sourcing; 1000.
171. Chia Nan University of Pharmacy and Scienc. 2015. Patch testing of Ocean White® (20% Sargassum Glaucescens Extract, 79% water, 1% phenoxyethanol). Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on September 12, 2018.
172. Güven KC, Percot A, and Sezik E. Alkaloids in marine algae. *Marine Drugs*. 2010;8(2):269-284.
173. Soares C, Machado S, Vieira EF, et al. Seaweeds from Portuguese coast: a potential food source. *IOP Conference Series: Materials Science and Engineering*. 2017;231(Conference 1):1-7.
174. Blunden G, Guiry MD, Druehl LD, et al. Trigonelline and other betaines in species of laminariales. *Natural Product Communications*. 2012;7(7):863-865.
175. Roleda MY, Skjermo J, Marfaing H, et al. Iodine content in bulk biomass of wild-harvested and cultivated edible seaweeds: inherent variations determine species-specific daily allowable consumption. *Food Chemistry*. 2018;254(July 15):333-339.
176. Council of Europe, European Pharmacopoeia Commission, and European Directorate for the Quality of Medicines & Healthcare. European pharmacopoeia. 7 ed. Strasbourg: Council of Europe: European Directorate for the Quality of Medicines and Healthcare, 2010.
177. Gall EA, Küpper FC, and Kloareg B. A survey of iodine content in *Laminaria digitata*. *Botanica Mariana*. 2004;47(1):30-37.
178. Kadam SU, Tiwari BK, and O'Donnell CP. Extraction, structure and biofunctional activities of laminarin from brown algae. *International Journal of Food Science and Technology*. 2015;50(1):24-31.
179. Fitton JH, Irhimeh M, and Falk N. Macroalgal fucoidan extracts: A new opportunity for marine cosmetics. *Cosmetics & Toiletries Magazine*. 2007;144(8):55-64.
180. Tarakhovskaya ER, Maslov YI, and Shishova MF. Phytohormones in algae. *Russian Journal of Plant Physiology*. 2007;54(2):163-170.
181. Lorenzo JM, Agregán R, Munekata PES, et al. Proximate composition and nutritional value of three macroalgae: *Ascophyllum nodosum*, *Fucus vesiculosus* and *Bifurcaria bifurcata*. *Marine Drugs*. 2017;15(11):360
182. Duke JA. Handbook of phytochemical constituents of GRAS herbs and other economic plants. <http://phytochem.nal.usda.gov/phytochem/plants/show/933?et=>. Boca Raton, FL. Last Updated 1992. Date Accessed 7-23-2018.
183. Active Concepts. 2018. Compositional breakdown ACB Wakame Bioferment Advanced (Undaria Pinnatifida Cell Culture Extract). Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on 10/3/18.

184. Active Concepts. 2015. Compositional breakdown AC Phytogel (Hydrolyzed Fucus Vesiculosus Protein). Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on September 12, 2018.
185. Active Concepts. 2018. Compositional breakdown AC Algae Blend Sorb (contains 1.3% Sargassum Filipendula Extract). Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on 10/25/18.
186. Rose M, Lewis J, Langford N, et al. Arsenic in seaweed - forms, concentration and dietary exposure. *Food and Chemical Toxicity*. 2007;45(7):1263-1267.
187. Reis PA, Gonçalves J, Abreu H, et al. Seaweed *Alaria esculenta* as a biomonitor species of metal contamination in Aughinish Bay (Ireland). *Ecological Indicators*. 2016;69(October):19-25.
188. Biotech Marine. 2015. Alariane™ Physico-chemical data (Alaria Esculenta Extract in butylene glycol and water). Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on September 12, 2018.
189. Biotech Marine. 2015. Alariane™ AD Physico-chemical data (Alaria Esculenta Extract in butylene glycol and water- dried before extraction). Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on September 11, 2018.
190. Biotech Marine. 2016. Kalpariane™ Physicochemical data (Alaria Esculenta Extract in Caprylic Capric Triglycerides). Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on September 11, 2018.
191. Anonymous. 2019. Attestation on heavy metals for a mixture containing Water, Ascophyllum Nodosum Extract and Halopteris Scoparia Extract. Unpublished data submitted by the Personal Care Products Council on January 24, 2019.
192. Personal Care Products Council. 9-4-2018. Fucus Vesiculosus Extract and Hizikia Fusiforme Extract. Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council September 12, 2018.
193. Biotech Marine. 2016. Oleaphycol FV Physico-chemical data (Fucus Vesiculosus Extract in Caprylic/Capric Triglyceride). Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on September 13, 2018.
194. Anonymous. 2019. Attestation on heavy metals for a mixture containing Water and Fucus Serratus Extract. Unpublished data submitted by the Personal Care Products Council on January 24, 2019.
195. Biotech Marine. 2015. Pyrenoine™ Physico-chemical data (Fucus Spiralis Extract in butylene glycol and water). Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on September 13, 2018.
196. Anonymous. 2019. Attestation on heavy metals for a mixture containing Water, Fucus Spiralis Extract and Tetraselmis Chi Extract. Unpublished data submitted by the Personal Care Products Council on January 28, 2019.
197. Anonymous. 2019. Attestation on heavy metals for a mixture containing Water, Himanthalia Elongata Extract, Fucus Vesiculosus Extract and Saccharomyces Cerevisiae Extract. Unpublished data submitted by the Personal Care Products Council on January 24, 2019.
198. Biotech Marine. 2017. Oleaphycol LD Physico-chemical data (Laminaria Digitata Extract in Caprylic/Capric Triglyceride). Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on September 13, 2018.
199. Biotech Marine. 2005. Oleaphycol LD Physico-chemical data (Laminaria Digitata Extract in water and propylene glycol). Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on September 13, 2018.
200. Active Concepts. 2018. Compositional breakdown AC Hydrating Seaweed Complex (mixture of Laminaria Japonica, Nereocystis Leutkeana and Macrocystis Pyrifera Extracts). Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on September 12, 2018.
201. Biotech Marine. 2017. Phycoboreane™ 2C (Laminaria Hyperborea Extract in water) Physicochemical data. Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on 9/11/18.
202. Anonymous. 2019. Attestation on heavy metals for a mixture containing Caprylic/Capric Triglyceride, Laminaria Ochroleuca Extract and Tocopherol. Unpublished data submitted by the Personal Care Products Council on January 24, 2019.
203. Biotech Marine. 2016. Phlorogine™ (Laminaria Saccharina Extract in Water and Propylene Glycol) Physico-chemical data. Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on 9/11/18.
204. Personal Care Products Council. 9-11-2018. Laminaria Saccharina Extract. Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on 9/11/18.
205. Anonymous. 2019. Attestation on heavy metals for a mixture containing Water, Butylene Glycol and Lessonia Nigrescens Extract. Unpublished data submitted by the Personal Care Products Council on January 24, 2019.
206. Anonymous. 2019. Attestation on heavy metals for a mixture containing Water and Pelvetia Canaliculata Extract. Unpublished data submitted by the Personal Care Products Council on January 28, 2019.

207. Biotech Marine. 2017. Phycol™ PC BG/PF (Pelvetia Canaliculata Extract in Butylene Glycol and Water) Physico-chemical data. Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on September 22, 2018.
208. Biotech Marine. 2018. Ambre Oceane™ SPE (Pelvetia Canaliculata Extract in Water) Physicochemical data. Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on 9/11/18.
209. Biotech Marine. 2015. Ambre Oceane™ 2C (Pelvetia Canaliculata Extract in Water) Physicochemical data. Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on 9/11/18.
210. Personal Care Products Council. 9-13-2018. Pelvetia Canaliculata Extract and Laminaria Digitata Extract. Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on 9/13/18.
211. Personal Care Products Council. 2018. Material specification Sargassum Glaucescens Extract. Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on September 12, 2018.
212. Anonymous. 2019. Attestation on heavy metals for a mixture containing Water, and Sargassum Muticum Extract. Unpublished data submitted by the Personal Care Products Council on January 28, 2019.
213. Personal Care Products Council. 10-3-2018. Undaria Pinnatifida Cell Culture Extract. Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on 10/3/18.
214. Biotech Marine. 2008. Phycol® UP (Undaria Pinnatifida Extract in Water and Propylene Glycol) Physico-chemical data. Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on 9/13/18.
215. Biotech Marine. 2016. Ephemere™ (Undaria Pinnatifida Extract in Caprylic/Capric Triglyceride) Physico-chemical data. Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on 9/13/18.
216. Personal Care Products Council. 2-19-0019. Concentration of Use by FDA Product Category - Brown Algae. Additional Concentration of Use Information - Halidrys Siliquosa Extract. Unpublished data submitted by the Personal Care Products Council on February 19, 2019.
217. MacArtain P, Gill C, Brooks M, et al. Nutritional Value of Edible Seaweeds. *Nutrition Reviews*. 2007;65(12):535-543.
218. Cofrades S, López-López I, Bravo L, et al. Nutritional and Antioxidant Properties of Different Brown and Red Spanish Edible Seaweeds. *Food Science and Technology International*. 2010;16(5)
219. Guiry MD. Use of seaweed as food in Ireland. http://www.seaweed.ie/uses_ireland/irishseaweedfood.php. Last Updated 2019. Date Accessed 2-14-2019.
220. Marhuenda J, Gironés-Vilaplana A, Galvez M, et al. Antioxidant capacity and total phenolics in different types of edible seaweed after three times of cooking. *Agro Food Industry Hi Tech*. 2016;27(2):57-59.
221. Institut Pasteur de Lille. 2014. In vitro skin irritation: Reconstructed human epidermis test method Ephemere™ (Undaria Pinnatifida Extract in Caprylic/Capric Triglyceride). Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on 9/13/18.
222. Laboratoire Cosderma. 2007. Verification in humans of the skin compatibility of a cosmetic product after single application under dressing 24 hour patch test Olea Alaria (<5% Alaria Esculenta Extract; >95% Caprylic/Capric Triglycerides). Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on September 11, 2018.
223. Eurofins A TS. 2006. Summary: Evaluation of the cutaneous tolerance of a cosmetic product after a single application under occlusive patch during 48 hours: patch test method (mixture containing Water, Ascophyllum Nodosum Extract and Halopteris Scoparia Extract). Unpublished data submitted by the Personal Care Products Council on January 24, 2019.
224. Eurofins ATS. 2005. Summary: Evaluation of the cutaneous tolerance of a cosmetic product after a single application under occlusive patch during 48 hours: patch test method (mixture Water and Fucus Serratus Extract). Unpublished data submitted by the Personal Care Products Council on January 24, 2019.
225. Palmer Research. 2004. Etude de la tolérance cutanée aiguë d'une matière première chez le volontaire adulte: Patch-test 24 heures occlusif sous contrôle dermatologique. Pyrenoine (Fucus Spiralis Extract in water and butylene glycol). Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on 9/10/18.
226. Eurofins ATS. 2011. Summary: Evaluation of skin tolerance of a cosmetic product after a single application under occluded patch during 48h on 14 volunteers: 48 hours patch test (Water, Fucus Spiralis Extract and Tetraselmis Chi Extract). Unpublished data submitted by the Personal Care Products Council on January 28, 2019.
227. EVIC France. 2016. Summary: Human patch test under dermatological control (mixture containing Water, Himanthalia Elongata Extract, Fucus Vesiculosus Extract and Saccharomyces Cerevisiae Extract). Unpublished data submitted by the Personal Care Products Council on January 24, 2019.

228. Palmer Research. 2004. Etude de la tolérance cutanée aiguë d'une matière première chez le volontaire adulte: Patch-test 24 heures occlusif sous contrôle dermatologique. Oleaphycol LD (Laminaria Digitata Extract in Caprylic/Capric Triglyceride). Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on September 13, 2018.
229. Laboratoire Cosderma. 2010. Checking on human beings of the cutaneous tolerance of a cosmetic product after single application under patch: Patch test 24h (Phycoboreane™ 2C - Laminaria Hyperborea Extract in water). Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on 9/11/18.
230. DECS Investigation Clinique. 1999. Study of acute skin tolerance in adult volunteers: 24-hour patch test: Antileukine 6 (Laminaria Ochroleuca Extract in Caprylic/Capric Triglyceride). Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on 9/11/18.
231. Eurofins ATS. 2013. Summary: Assessment of skin tolerance of a cosmetic product after a single application under occluded patch test during 48 H on 10 volunteers: 48 hours patch test (mixture containing Caprylic/Capric Triglyceride, Laminaria Ochroleuca Extract and Tocopherol). Unpublished data submitted by the Personal Care Products Council on January 24, 2019.
232. Eurofins ATS. 2005. Summary: Evaluation de la tolerance cutanee d'un produit cosmetique apres application unique sous pansement occlusif pendant 48 heures: methode des patchs tests (mixture Water, Butylene Glycol and Lessonia Nigrescens Extract). Unpublished data submitted by the Personal Care Products Council on January 24, 2019.
233. Palmer Research. 2004. Etude de la tolérance cutanée aiguë d'une matière première chez le volontaire adulte: Patch-test 24 heures occlusif sous contrôle dermatologique. (Phycol PC BG Pelvetia Canaliculata Extract in Butylene Glycol and Water). Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council September 22, 2019.
234. Eurofins ATS. 2006. Summary: Evaluation of the cutaneous tolerance of a cosmetic product after a single application under occlusive patch during 48 hours: patch test method (Water and Pelvetia Canaliculata Extract). Unpublished data submitted by the Personal Care Products Council on January 28, 2019.
235. Eurofins ATS. 2006. Summary: Evaluation of the cutaneous tolerance of a cosmetic product after a single application under occlusive patch during 48 hours: patch test method (Water, and Sargassum Muticum Extract). Unpublished data submitted by the Personal Care Products Council on January 28, 2019.
236. Active Concepts. 2018. OECD TG 442D: In vitro skin sensitization (AC Algae Blend Sorb [contains 1.3% Sargassum Filipendula Extract]). Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on 10/25/18.
237. Consumer Product Testing Co. 2013. Repeated insult patch test- night moisturizer containing 0.05% Alaria Esculenta Extract. Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on August 20, 2018.
238. UNITIS. 2019. Safety reports on Brown-Algae Derived Ingredients as Used in Cosmetics (addition of some dose volume information for HRIPTs). Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on 03/14/2019.
239. Eurofins A TS. 2006. Summary: Evaluation of a product through its application on the chorioallantoic membrane of a chicken eggshell: Het Cam method (mixture Water, Ascophyllum Nodosum Extract and Halopteris Scoparia Extract). Unpublished data submitted by the Personal Care Products Council on January 24, 2019.
240. Eurofins ATS. 2005. Summary: Evaluation of a potential irritancy of a product through its application on the chorioallantoic membrane of a chicken eggshell: Het Cam method (mixture Water and Fucus Serratus Extract). Unpublished data submitted by the Personal Care Products Council on January 24, 2019.
241. EVIC France. 2016. Summary: Assessment of the irritant potential of a test item after application to the embryonic hen's egg chorioallantoic membrane - HET-CAM (mixture containing Water, Himanthalia Elongata Extract, Fucus Vesiculosus Extract and Saccharomyces Cerevisiae Extract). Unpublished data submitted by the Personal Care Products Council on January 24, 2019.
242. Consumer Product Testing Co. 2006. The Hen's Egg Test - Utilizing the Chorioallantoic Membrane (HET-CAM) (product 1 tested contains 8-12% Laminaria Digitata Extract). Unpublished data submitted by Personal Care Products Council on 11/27/18.
243. Eurofins ATS. 2005. Summary: Evaluation du potentiel irritant d'un produit par application sur la membrane chorio-allantoidienne de l'oeuf de poule: methode du Het Cam (mixture Water, Butylene Glycol and Lessonia Nigrescens Extract). Unpublished data submitted by the Personal Care Products Council on January 24, 2019.
244. Eurofins ATS. 2006. Summary: Evaluation of the potential irritancy of a product through its application on the chorioallantoic membrane of a chicken eggshell: Het Cam Method (Water, and Sargassum Muticum Extract). Unpublished data submitted by the Personal Care Products Council on January 28, 2019.
245. Conz PA, La Greca G, Benedetti P, et al. Fucus vesiculosus: a nephrotoxic algae? *Nephrology, Dialysis, Transplantation*. 1998;13(2):526-527.



Memorandum

TO: Bart Heldreth, Ph.D.
Executive Director - Cosmetic Ingredient Review

FROM: Carol Eisenmann, Ph.D.
Personal Care Products Council

DATE: December 5, 2024

SUBJECT: Cladosiphon Novae-Caledoniae Extract (an insufficient brown algae-derived ingredient)

A supplier respectfully submits the following information on Cladosiphon Novae-Caledoniae Extract and requests that the insufficient data conclusion be reconsidered.

Anonymous. 2022. Preparation and composition of Cladosiphon Novae-Caledoniae Extract

Anonymous. 2024. Safety Study Summary – Cladosiphon Novae-Caledoniae Extract.

June 15,2022

Preparation and composition of *Cladosiphon Novae-Caledoniae* Extract1. Preparation of *Cladosiphon Novae-Caledoniae* Extract

(1) Preparation procedure

Harvesting of Mozuku (*Cladosiphon Novae-Caledoniae*) → Washing with water →
 Extracting with hot water → Filtration with diatomaceous earth → Ultrafiltration
 → *Cladosiphon Novae-Caledoniae* Extract

(2) Information on basic physical and chemical properties

Cladosiphon Novae-Caledoniae Extract is an aqueous solution containing approximately 1.2% fucoidan.

Appearance form : Liquid
 Color : Pale yellow
 Oder : A faint characteristic odor
 pH : 6.0 ~ 8.0
 Water solubility : Freely soluble in water
 Average molecular weight of fucoidan: ca. 1,200,000 (SEC-MALS method)

2. Composition of *Cladosiphon Novae-Caledoniae* Extract (fucoidan)

Cladosiphon Novae-Caledoniae Extract is an aqueous solution containing approximately 1.2% fucoidan. Sample used for compositional analysis was prepared from *Cladosiphon Novae-Caledoniae* Extract diluted with water by spray drying.

The results of analysis are shown in Table 1.

Table 1. Composition of *Cladosiphon Novae-Caledoniae* Extract (fucoidan)

Items	Components		Analytical Methods
1. Carbohydrates	Fucose (%)	39.1	Sulfuric acid-thioglycolic acid method
	Glucuronic acid (%)	14.2	HPLC
	Galactose (%)	2.5	
	Mannose (%)	2.6	
	Glucose (%)	1.0	
	Arabinose (%)	0.0	
	Ribose (%)	0.0	
	Xylose (%)	5.9	
2. Sulfates	Sulfates (%)	19.3	Logizonic acid method

3. Inorganics components	Na (%)	0.4	Atomic-absorption spectroscopy
	Mg (%)	0.1	
	K (%)	0.6	
	Ca (%)	0.7	
	As (ppm)	0.9	
	Pb (ppm)	0.0	Inductively Coupled Plasma Atomic Emission Spectroscopy
Water (%)	5.5	Karl Fisher method	

December 2024

Safety Study Summary – Cladosiphon Novae-Caledoniae Extract

These safety studies **No.1 to No.10** for *Cladosiphon Novae-Caledoniae Extract* were conducted in 2005.

Test Guideline:

- Guideline for the Safety Evaluation of Cosmetics Guideline for Safety Evaluation of Cosmetics (March 30, 2001, edited by Japan Cosmetic Industry Association)
- Guidelines for Genotoxicity Testing of Pharmaceuticals (November 1, 1999, Pharmaceutical Affairs Council No. 1604, Director, Evaluation and Management Division, Pharmaceutical Safety Bureau, Ministry of Health and Welfare)

GLP:

- Ministerial Ordinance on Standards for Conducting Non-clinical Studies on Drug Safety (Ministry of Health, Labour and Welfare Ordinance No. 21: March 26, 1997)

The safety study **No.11** was conducted in 2024.

No.	Evaluation items	Results
1	<p>Acute oral toxicity in rats (limit test)</p> <p>Test substance: Undiluted <i>Cladosiphon Novae-Caledoniae Extract</i> (ca. 1.2% as fucoidan) with 0.5% phenoxyethanol as a preservative was applied.</p> <p>Methods: Gastric tube administration of 2000 mg/kg in water for injection to 5 male and 5 female SD rats. Observed for 14 days.</p> <p>Result: No effect at all.</p>	≥2,000mg/kg
2	<p>Skin irritation test (including damaged skin irritation)</p> <p>Test substance: Undiluted <i>Cladosiphon Novae-Caledoniae Extract</i> (ca. 1.2% as fucoidan) with 0.5% phenoxyethanol as a preservative was applied.</p> <p>Methods: Three male Japanese white rabbits were treated at one site on each side of their sheared backs; one site was on normal skin and the other on skin with abrasion wounds. After uniformly applying 0.5 mL of the test substance to an approximately 2.5 x 2.5 cm lint cloth patch, the patch was occluded and applied to each treatment site for 24 hours. At 1, 24, 48, and 72 hours after patch removal, signs of erythema and edema were scored according to Draize's skin reaction criteria to determine the primary skin irritation potential of the test substance.</p>	negative

	<p>Results: No skin irritation changes were observed in all subjects on both normal and abraded skin.</p> <p>(Remarks) Abraded skin: A well-shaped abrasion was made on the stratum corneum using a syringe needle to avoid scarring the dermis.</p>	
3	<p>2-week continuous skin irritation test</p> <p>Test substance: Undiluted <i>Cladosiphon Novae-Caledoniae Extract</i> (ca. 1.2% as fucoidan) with 0.5% phenoxyethanol as a preservative was applied.</p> <p>Methods: Three male Japanese white rabbits were treated at a small area on the back of sheared rabbits. Test substance was applied 0.2 mL once daily for 14 consecutive days by open dermal injection to the site of administration. The skin irritation was evaluated for signs of erythema and edema before and 24 hours after the last dose (Day 14) according to Draize's criteria for skin reactions.</p> <p>Results: No erythema, edema, or other irritant changes were observed in all patients at any time of observation.</p>	negative
4	<p>Phototoxicity Test</p> <p>Test substance: Undiluted <i>Cladosiphon Novae-Caledoniae Extract</i> (ca. 1.2% as fucoidan) with 0.5% phenoxyethanol as a preservative was applied.</p> <p>Methods: Test substance and positive substance, 0.1% 8-MOP acetone solution, were openly applied to the backs of 5 male Hartley guinea pigs (5 animals each) at a dose of 0.02 mL each. Thirty minutes after application, the left side was irradiated with light and the right side was irradiated with long-wavelength ultraviolet light at an irradiation energy level of approximately 10 J/cm². Skin reactions were evaluated at 24, 48, and 72 hours after irradiation, and the presence of phototoxicity was assessed.</p> <p>Results: In the test substance group, no skin reaction was observed in all cases at 24, 48 and 72 hours after light irradiation.</p>	negative
5	<p>Eye Mucous Membrane Irritation Test</p> <p>Test substance: Undiluted <i>Cladosiphon Novae-Caledoniae Extract</i> (ca. 1.2% as fucoidan) with 0.5% phenoxyethanol as a preservative was applied.</p> <p>Methods: Three male Japanese white rabbits were used. A 0.1 mL ocular injection of undiluted test substance was made into the conjunctival sac of the right rabbit eye. The cornea, iris, and</p>	negative non-irritating(N)

	<p>conjunctiva were observed with the naked eye and slit lamp at 1, 24, 48, and 72 hours after administration, and the ocular irritation of the test substance solution was determined according to Draize's criteria for ocular reactions 1).</p> <p>Results: No ocular irritation changes were observed in the cornea, iris, or conjunctiva of all subjects at 1, 24, 48, and 72 hours. The mean total score (MTS) was 0 at every time, thus the test substance was classified as non-irritating (N) according to Kay & Calandra's criteria for ocular irritation intensity.</p>	
6	<p>Skin sensitization test (Maximization Method)</p> <p>Test substance: Undiluted <i>Cladosiphon Novae-Caledoniae Extract</i> (ca. 1.2% as fucoidan) with 0.5% phenoxyethanol as a preservative was applied.</p> <p>Methods: Five male Hartley guinea pigs were used for the Maximization method. Initial sensitization was achieved by intradermal administration of 25% test substance solution at the sensitization site on the dorsal surface of the neck. On day 7 after the initial sensitization, a lint cloth patch with the undiluted test substance was applied to the sensitized area and re-sensitized by occlusion for 48 hours. On the second week after re-sensitization, a lint cloth patch was applied with the undiluted test substance to the sensitization site on the right ventral side of the abdomen for 24 hours. Skin reactions were evaluated at 24 and 48 hours after elicitation according to the criteria of Magnusson et al.</p> <p>Results: No skin reactions were observed in all guinea pigs at any time of observation at the site of attraction of the test substance.</p>	negative
7	<p>Photosensitization Test (Adjuvant & Strip method)</p> <p>Test substance: Undiluted <i>Cladosiphon Novae-Caledoniae Extract</i> (ca. 1.2% as fucoidan) with 0.5% phenoxyethanol as a preservative was applied.</p> <p>Methods: Five male Hartley guinea pigs were used and evaluated by the Adjuvant & Strip method. The guinea pigs were sensitized on the dorsal neck and four corners of the guinea pigs were injected intradermally with water for injection-FCA emulsion. The skin at the sensitization site was openly coated with undiluted test substance, water for injection, and 1.0% tribromosalicylanilide (TBS) acetone solution to the extent that very mild erythema occurred. The skin was</p>	negative

	<p>then irradiated with long-wavelength ultraviolet light at an irradiation energy level of approximately 10 J/cm². Sensitization was repeated once a day for 5 consecutive days. Two weeks after the last sensitization, a 1.5 x 1.5 cm compartment was made on each side of the skin to serve as the trigger site. The test substance group and the test substance control group were treated with undiluted test substance, and the positive substance group was treated with 0.5% tribromosalicylanilide (TBS) acetone solution. The left side was the light-irradiated area and the right side was the non-irradiated area. The irradiated area was irradiated with long-wavelength ultraviolet light at an energy level of approximately 10 J/cm².</p> <p>The irradiated area was observed at 24 and 48 hours after irradiation to determine whether or not photosensitization occurred.</p> <p>Results: In the test substance group, no skin reaction was observed at the site of attraction to the undiluted test substance regardless of the presence or absence of light irradiation at any time of observation.</p>	
8	<p>Reverse Mutation Test (Ames Test)</p> <p>Test substance: Undiluted <i>Cladosiphon Novae-Caledoniae Extract</i> (ca. 1.2% as fucoidan) with 0.5% phenoxyethanol as a preservative was applied.</p> <p>Methods: Strains TA98, TA100, TA1535, and TA1537, which are histidine-requiring strains of <i>Salmonella typhimurium</i>, and WP2uvrA, which is tryptophan-requiring strain of <i>E. coli</i>, were treated with the following doses: 5000, 2500, 1250, 625, 312, 5 μg/plate, respectively.</p> <p>Results: The number of reversion mutant colonies of each test strain in the test substance group, with or without metabolic activation system, was not dose-dependent or increased more than 2-fold in the negative control group. Under the conditions of the test, the results were considered negative.</p>	negative
9	<p>Chromosome Aberration Test</p> <p>Test substance: Undiluted <i>Cladosiphon Novae-Caledoniae Extract</i> (ca. 1.2% as fucoidan) with 0.5% phenoxyethanol as a preservative was applied.</p> <p>Methods: The Chinese hamster fibroblast cell line (CHL/IU cells) was used in the short-time and continuous treatment methods.</p> <p>Concentrations were 1.25, 2.5, and 5 mg/mL for the 24- and 48-hour culture series in the continuous treatment method, as well as for the</p>	negative

	<p>short treatment method without S9.</p> <p>Results: The frequency of cells with structural or numerical abnormalities (ploidy) in all culture series treated with the test substance was comparable to that in the negative control group. No precipitation of the test substance was observed. In the positive control group of each culture series, there was a marked increase in the frequency of cells with structural abnormalities. The chromosomal aberration-inducing potential of test substance under the test conditions was judged to be negative.</p>	
10	<p>Human Patch Test (24-hour sealed patch test)</p> <p>Test substance: Undiluted <i>Cladosiphon Novae-Caledoniae Extract</i> (ca. 1.2% as fucoidan) with 0.5% phenoxyethanol as a preservative was applied. The control substance was distilled water.</p> <p>Methods: Thirty (30) adult subjects (13 males and 17 females) with normal skin were sealed and applied test sample and control substance to the medial upper arm, which had been previously wiped clean with warm water, using finn chamber and Scanpor tape for 24 hours. Bathing, inoculation of alcoholic beverages, taking drugs, strenuous exercise involving sweating, and eating highly stimulating foods were prohibited during the study period. Rubbing or physical stimulation of the applied area was also prohibited.</p> <p>After 24 hours, the test sample and tape were removed, wiped gently with a towel moistened with slightly warm water, and the contact area of the test sample was marked in four places with an oil-based marker. The skin irritation index was calculated based on the criteria of the Japanese patch test study.</p> <p>Result: After 30 minutes after removal, test substance showed "±: mild erythema" in 3 subjects and "-:no reaction" in 27 subjects and control substance showed "±: mild erythema" in 3 subjects and "-:no reaction" in 27 subjects. After 24 hours after removal, "-: no reaction" in all subjects for test substance. Control substance showed "±: mild erythema" in 1 subject and "-:no reaction" in 29 subjects, but the reaction of 1 subject with "±: mild erythema" for control substance disappeared 5 days after the end of the study with no treatment, leaving only hyperpigmentation.</p> <p>The skin irritation index was 5.0 for test substance/5.0 for control substance and no adverse events were observed. Since the skin irritation index of test substance is less than 15.0, test substance was</p>	negative

	evaluated as a safe product.	
11	<p>Human Repeat Insult Patch Test</p> <p>Test substance: Undiluted <i>Cladosiphon Novae-Caledoniae Extract</i> (ca. 1.2% as fucoidan) with 0.5% phenoxyethanol as a preservative was applied. The control substance was distilled water.</p> <p>Methods: The study was conducted single blind, at a single center according to DRCsRIP Master Protocol (12 January 2021). 113 healthy male (33, age 18-53) and female (84, age 19-59) subjects were enrolled into the study. 107 subjects completed the study, and 6 subjects withdrew for personal reasons.</p> <p>Patches consisted of 5 cm wide strips of occlusive Blenderm® (3M Co) tape to which Webril® (Kendall Corporation) disks, approximately 2 cm square were affixed along the midline. The study consisted of “Induction” and “Challenge” phases. Approximately 0.2 ml of the test material was applied to the fabric portion of the adhesive patch.</p> <p>The study was performed under single-blind conditions. The test article was patched under occlusive or semi-occlusive conditions. A total of nine induction applications were worn for approximately 24 hours for three weeks (patching Monday, Wednesday, Friday). Subjects had a rest period of 10 to 21 days. Challenge patches were applied to naïve sites for approximately 24 hours and skin response scores made immediately after removal and again approximately 48 and 72 hours post challenge patch application.</p> <p>Results: The test article elicited no visible erythematous reactions during the Induction Phase of the study. There were no questionable reactions during the Challenge Phase by any of the subjects to the test article.</p> <p>The test article can be considered as safe for use under the conditions of the study, based on the Shelanski method to support claims such as, “Dermatologically Tested”, “Clinically Tested”, “Kind to Skin”, “Safe for Skin” and “Dermatologist Approved”.</p>	negative